**NeXus Manual** 

	COLLABORATORS					
	TITLE :					
	NeXus Manual					
ACTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE			
WRITTEN BY	Peter F. Peterson	January 18, 2010				

REVISION HISTORY				
NUMBER	DATE	DESCRIPTION	NAME	

## **Contents**

1	Pur	pose of l	NeXus definitions	1
	1.1	Simple	plotting	1
	1.2	Unified	d format for reduction and analysis	1
	1.3	Define	d Dictionary	2
2	Med	liaWiki	Manual	3
	2.1	NeXus	Introduction	3
		2.1.1	What is NeXus?	3
			2.1.1.1 A Set of Subroutines	3
			2.1.1.2 A Set of Design Principles	4
			2.1.1.2.1 Example of a NeXus File	4
			2.1.1.2.2 Important Classes	4
			2.1.1.2.3 Simple Example	5
			2.1.1.3 A Set of Instrument Definitions	6
			2.1.1.4 A Set of Low-Level File Formats	6
		2.1.2	The NeXus Application Programming Interface (API)	6
			2.1.2.1 How do I write a NeXus file?	6
			2.1.2.2 How do I read a NeXus file?	8
		2.1.3	NeXus Mailing Lists	10
		2.1.4	Where to go from here?	10
	2.2	NeXus	Design	10
		2.2.1	NeXus Objects	10
			2.2.1.1 Data Items	10
			2.2.1.2 Data Attributes	10
			2.2.1.3 Data Groups	10
		2.2.2	NeXus Classes	11
			2.2.2.1 NeXus Data	11
			2.2.2.2 NeXus Attributes	13
		2.2.3	NeXus Coordinate System	14
			2.2.3.1 Simple (Spherical Polar) Coordinate System	14

			2.2.3.2 NXgeometry based system	14
		2.2.4	NeXus units	16
		2.2.5	NeXus array dimensions	16
		2.2.6	NeXus Data Types	17
	2.3	NeXus	Instruments	17
	2.4	Frequer	tly Asked Questions	17
3	Gen	eric feat	ures of NeXus files	19
	3.1	Links		19
	3.2	Linking	data to detectors	19
	3.3	Monitor	rs as a special kind of data	19
4	Veri	fication a	and validation of files	20
	4.1	Overvie	w	20
	4.2	Definiti	ons of these terms	20
	4.3	NeXus	data files may use multiple base classes or application definitions	20
	4.4	Validati	on techniques	21
		4.4.1	Overview	21
		4.4.2	Validation of NeXus data files	21
		4.4.3	Validation of NeXus Definition Language (NXDL) specification files	21
		4.4.4	Schematron	21
		4.4.5	Transformation of NXDL files to Schematron	21
5	The	NeXus A	Application-Program Interface	22
	5.1	Descrip	tion of the NeXus Application-Program Interface	22
6	The	NeXus I	Definition Language	23
	6.1	Descrip	tion of the NeXus Definition Language	23
		6.1.1	NXxrot.nxdl.xml: example NXDL specification	24
		6.1.2	nxdl.xsd source code	25
A	NeX	us classe	s	34
	A.1	Overvie	w of NeXus classes	34
	A.2	NeXus	Base Classes	36
		A.2.1	NXaperture	36
		A.2.2	NXattenuator	36
		A.2.3	NXbeam	37
		A.2.4	NXbeam_stop	39
		A.2.5	NXbending_magnet	39
		A.2.6	NXcharacterization	40
		A.2.7	NXcollimator	40

	A.2.8	NXcrystal	42
	A.2.9	NXdata	44
	A.2.10	NXdetector	45
		A.2.10.1 Special case table: efficiency[NXdata] (within NXdetector[definition])	49
	A.2.11	NXdetector_group	49
	A.2.12	NXdisk_chopper	50
	A.2.13	NXentry	51
	A.2.14	NXenvironment	52
	A.2.15	NXevent_data	53
	A.2.16	NXfermi_chopper	54
	A.2.17	NXfilter	55
	A.2.18	NXflipper	56
	A.2.19	NXgeometry	56
	A.2.20	NXguide	57
	A.2.21	NXinsertion_device	58
	A.2.22	NXinstrument	59
	A.2.23	NXlog	60
	A.2.24	NXmirror	61
	A.2.25	NXmoderator	61
	A.2.26	NXmonitor	62
	A.2.27	NXmonochromator	63
	A.2.28	NXnote	64
	A.2.29	NXobject	65
	A.2.30	NXorientation	65
	A.2.31	NXparameters	66
	A.2.32	NXpolarizer	66
	A.2.33	NXpositioner	67
	A.2.34	NXprocess	67
	A.2.35	NXroot	68
	A.2.36	NXsample	69
	A.2.37	NXsensor	72
	A.2.38	NXshape	<b>7</b> 4
	A.2.39	NXsource	74
	A.2.40	NXtranslation	76
	A.2.41	NXuser	76
	A.2.42	NXvelocity_selector	77
A.3	NeXus	Application Classes	78
	A.3.1	NXarchive	78
		A.3.1.1 Special case table: entry[NXentry] (within NXarchive[definition])	78

	A.3.1.2	Special case table: user[NXuser] (within entry[NXentry])	79
	A.3.1.3	$Special\ case\ table:\ instrument[NXinstrument]\ (within\ entry[NXentry]) \qquad . \ . \ . \ . \ . \ . \ . \ . \ .$	79
	A.3.1.4	Special case table: [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])	80
	A.3.1.5	Special case table: sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])	80
A.3.2	NXgisas .		81
	A.3.2.1	Special case table: entry[NXentry] (within NXgisas[definition])	81
	A.3.2.2	$Special\ case\ table:\ instrument[NXinstrument]\ (within\ entry[NXentry]) \qquad . \ . \ . \ . \ . \ . \ . \ . \ .$	82
	A.3.2.3	$Special\ case\ table:\ source[NX source]\ (within\ instrument[NX instrument])\ \ .\ \ .\ \ .\ \ .\ \ .$	82
	A.3.2.4	$Special\ case\ table:\ monochromator[NXmonochromator]\ (within\ instrument[NXinstrument])\ \ .$	83
	A.3.2.5	$Special\ case\ table:\ detector[NX detector]\ (within\ instrument[NX instrument]) \\ \qquad \dots \dots \dots$	83
	A.3.2.6	Special case table: sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])	83
	A.3.2.7	$Special\ case\ table:\ control[NXmonitor]\ (within\ entry[NXentry])\ \dots\dots\dots\dots\dots\dots$	83
A.3.3	NXiqproc		84
	A.3.3.1	Special case table: [NXentry] (within NXiqproc[definition])	84
	A.3.3.2	$Special \ case \ table: instrument[NXinstrument] \ (within \ [NXentry]) \ \ . \ . \ . \ . \ . \ . \ . \ . \ . $	84
	A.3.3.3	Special case table: [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])	85
	A.3.3.4	Special case table: [NXsample] (within [NXentry])	85
	A.3.3.5	Special case table: reduction[NXprocess] (within [NXentry])	85
	A.3.3.6	$Special\ case\ table:\ input[NXparameters]\ (within\ reduction[NXprocess])\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .$	86
	A.3.3.7	Special case table: [NXdata] (within [NXentry])	86
A.3.4	NXmonop	od	86
	A.3.4.1	$Special\ case\ table:\ [NXinstrument]\ (within\ NXmonopd[definition]) \ \ \dots \ \dots \ \ \dots \ \ \dots$	87
	A.3.4.2	Special case table: [NXsource] (within [NXinstrument])	87
	A.3.4.3	Special case table: [NXcrystal] (within [NXinstrument])	88
	A.3.4.4	Special case table: [NXdetector] (within [NXinstrument])	88
	A.3.4.5	$Special\ case\ table:\ [NX sample]\ (within\ NX monopd[definition])\ \ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .$	88
	A.3.4.6	Special case table: [NXmonitor] (within NXmonopd[definition])	88
A.3.5	NXrefscar	n	89
	A.3.5.1	$Special\ case\ table:\ entry[NXentry]\ (within\ NXrefscan[definition])\ \dots\dots\dots\dots\dots\dots\dots\dots$	89
	A.3.5.2	$Special\ case\ table:\ instrument[NXinstrument]\ (within\ entry[NXentry]) \\ \qquad \dots \dots \dots \dots \\ \dots$	89
	A.3.5.3	Special case table: [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])	90
	A.3.5.4	$Special\ case\ table:\ monochromator[NXmonochromator]\ (within\ instrument[NXinstrument])\ \ .$	90
	A.3.5.5	$Special \ case \ table: [NX detector] \ (within \ instrument[NX instrument]) \\ \qquad \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \\$	90
	A.3.5.6	$Special\ case\ table:\ sample[NX sample]\ (within\ entry[NX entry]) \ \ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .$	91
	A.3.5.7	$Special\ case\ table:\ control[NXmonitor]\ (within\ entry[NXentry])\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .$	91
A.3.6	NXreftof		91
	A.3.6.1	$Special\ case\ table:\ entry[NXentry]\ (within\ NXreftof[definition])\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\$	92
	A.3.6.2	$Special\ case\ table:\ instrument[NXinstrument]\ (within\ entry[NXentry]) \\ \qquad \dots \dots \dots \dots$	92
	A.3.6.3	$Special\ case\ table:\ chopper[NXdisk\_chopper]\ (within\ instrument[NXinstrument]) \\ \qquad \dots \dots .$	92

	A.3.6.4	Special case table: detector[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])	93
	A.3.6.5	Special case table: sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])	93
	A.3.6.6	Special case table: control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])	93
A.3.7	NXsas		93
	A.3.7.1	Special case table: [NXentry] (within NXsas[definition])	94
	A.3.7.2	Special case table: instrument[NXinstrument] (within [NXentry])	94
	A.3.7.3	Special case table: source[NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])	95
	A.3.7.4	$Special\ case\ table:\ monochromator[NXmonochromator]\ (within\ instrument[NXinstrument])\ \ .$	95
	A.3.7.5	$Special\ case\ table:\ collimator[NX collimator]\ (within\ instrument[NX instrument])\ \ .\ .\ .\ .\ .$	95
	A.3.7.6	Special case table: geometry[NXgeometry] (within collimator[NXcollimator])	96
	A.3.7.7	Special case table: shape[NXshape] (within geometry[NXgeometry])	96
	A.3.7.8	Special case table: detector[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])	96
	A.3.7.9	Special case table: sample[NXsample] (within [NXentry])	97
	A.3.7.10	Special case table: control[NXmonitor] (within [NXentry])	97
A.3.8	NXscan .		97
	A.3.8.1	Special case table: [NXentry] (within NXscan[definition])	98
	A.3.8.2	Special case table: [NXinstrument] (within [NXentry])	98
	A.3.8.3	Special case table: [NXdetector] (within [NXinstrument])	98
	A.3.8.4	Special case table: [NXsample] (within [NXentry])	99
	A.3.8.5	Special case table: [NXmonitor] (within [NXentry])	99
A.3.9	NXtas		99
	A.3.9.1	Special case table: entry[NXentry] (within NXtas[definition])	00
	A.3.9.2	Special case table: [NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])	00
	A.3.9.3	Special case table: [NXsource] (within [NXinstrument])	00
	A.3.9.4	Special case table: monochromator[NXcrystal] (within [NXinstrument])	01
	A.3.9.5	Special case table: analyzer[NXcrystal] (within [NXinstrument])	01
	A.3.9.6	Special case table: [NXdetector] (within [NXinstrument])	01
	A.3.9.7	Special case table: [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])	01
	A.3.9.8	Special case table: [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])1	02
A.3.10	NXtofraw		02
	A.3.10.1	Special case table: entry[NXentry] (within NXtofraw[definition])	03
	A.3.10.2	Special case table: user[NXuser] (within entry[NXentry])	03
	A.3.10.3	Special case table: [NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])	04
	A.3.10.4	Special case table: detector[NXdetector] (within [NXinstrument])	04
	A.3.10.5	Special case table: [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])	04
	A.3.10.6	Special case table: [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])1	05
A.3.11	NXtomo		05
	A.3.11.1	Special case table: entry[NXentry] (within NXtomo[definition])	06
	A.3.11.2	Special case table: instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])	06

	A.3.11.3	Special case table: [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])
	A.3.11.4	Special case table: bright_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 107
	A.3.11.5	Special case table: dark_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 107
	A.3.11.6	Special case table: sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])
	A.3.11.7	Special case table: sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])
	A.3.11.8	Special case table: control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])
A.3.12	NXtomop	hase
	A.3.12.1	Special case table: entry[NXentry] (within NXtomophase[definition])
	A.3.12.2	Special case table: instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])
	A.3.12.3	Special case table: [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])
	A.3.12.4	Special case table: bright_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 110
	A.3.12.5	Special case table: dark_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])
	A.3.12.6	$Special\ case\ table:\ sample[NX detector]\ (within\ instrument[NX instrument])\ \dots\dots\dots\dots\ 111$
	A.3.12.7	$Special\ case\ table:\ sample[NX sample]\ (within\ entry[NX entry]) \\ \qquad \dots \\ \qquad \dots \\ \qquad \dots \\ \qquad 111$
	A.3.12.8	$Special\ case\ table:\ control[NXmonitor]\ (within\ entry[NXentry])\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\$
A.3.13	NXtomop	roc
	A.3.13.1	Special case table: entry[NXentry] (within NXtomoproc[definition])
	A.3.13.2	Special case table: [NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])
	A.3.13.3	Special case table: [NXsource] (within [NXinstrument])
	A.3.13.4	Special case table: [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])
	A.3.13.5	Special case table: reconstruction[NXprocess] (within entry[NXentry])
	A.3.13.6	$Special\ case\ table:\ parameters [NX parameters]\ (within\ reconstruction [NX process])\ \ .\ \ .\ \ .\ \ .\ \ .\ 114$
	A.3.13.7	Special case table: data[NXdata] (within entry[NXentry])
A.3.14	NXxbase	
	A.3.14.1	Special case table: entry[NXentry] (within NXxbase[definition])
	A.3.14.2	Special case table: instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])
	A.3.14.3	Special case table: source[NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])
	A.3.14.4	$Special\ case\ table:\ monochromator[NXmonochromator]\ (within\ instrument[NXinstrument])\ \ .\ \ 116$
	A.3.14.5	Special case table: detector[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])
	A.3.14.6	Special case table: sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])
	A.3.14.7	Special case table: control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])
A.3.15	NXxeuler	
	A.3.15.1	Special case table: entry[NXentry] (within NXxeuler[definition])
	A.3.15.2	Special case table: instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])
	A.3.15.3	Special case table: detector[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])
	A.3.15.4	Special case table: sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])
A.3.16	NXxkappa	a
	A.3.16.1	Special case table: entry[NXentry] (within NXxkappa[definition])
	A.3.16.2	Special case table: instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])

			A.3.16.3	Special case table: detector[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])	121
			A.3.16.4	Special case table: sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])	121
		A.3.17	NXxnb .		121
			A.3.17.1	Special case table: entry[NXentry] (within NXxnb[definition])	122
			A.3.17.2	Special case table: instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])	122
			A.3.17.3	Special case table: detector[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])	123
			A.3.17.4	Special case table: sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])	123
		A.3.18	NXxrot .		123
			A.3.18.1	Special case table: entry[NXentry] (within NXxrot[definition])	124
			A.3.18.2	Special case table: instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])	124
			A.3.18.3	$Special\ case\ table:\ detector[NX detector]\ (within\ instrument[NX instrument]) \\ \qquad \dots \dots \dots$	124
			A.3.18.4	Special case table: sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])	125
	A.4	NeXus	Contribute	ed Classes	125
В	Roa	dmap			126
C	Brie	f history	of the Ne	Xus format	127
D	NIA	C			128
7	Inde	ex			129

# **List of Figures**

2.1	Example of a NeXus file	4
2.2	NXinstrument excerpt	5
2.3	Simple Example	5
24	Definition of translation and orientation geometry	15

## **List of Tables**

2.1	NXbrowse Command Description	9
2.2	Global Attributes	13
2.3	Data Attributes	13
6.1	Tabular representation of NXuser[definition]	23
A.1	Example Tabular representation of a NeXus class	34
A.2	Default values for occurences	36
A.3	Tabular representation of NXaperture[definition]	36
A.4	Tabular representation of NXattenuator[definition]	37
A.5	Tabular representation of NXbeam[definition]	37
A.6	Tabular representation of NXbeam_stop[definition]	39
A.7	Tabular representation of NXbending_magnet[definition]	40
A.8	Tabular representation of NXcharacterization[definition]	40
A.9	Tabular representation of NXcollimator[definition]	42
A.10	Tabular representation of NXcrystal[definition]	42
A.11	Tabular representation of NXdata[definition]	44
A.12	Tabular representation of NXdetector[definition]	46
A.13	Tabular representation of efficiency[NXdata] (within NXdetector[definition])	49
A.14	Tabular representation of NXdetector_group[definition]	50
A.15	Tabular representation of NXdisk_chopper[definition]	50
A.16	Tabular representation of NXentry[definition]	51
A.17	Tabular representation of NXenvironment[definition]	52
A.18	Tabular representation of NXevent_data[definition]	53
A.19	Tabular representation of NXfermi_chopper[definition]	54
A.20	Tabular representation of NXfilter[definition]	55
A.21	Tabular representation of NXflipper[definition]	56
A.22	Tabular representation of NXgeometry[definition]	57
A.23	Tabular representation of NXguide[definition]	57
A.24	Tabular representation of NXinsertion_device[definition]	58
A.25	Tabular representation of NXinstrument[definition]	59

A.26	Tabular representation of NXlog[definition]	60
A.27	Tabular representation of NXmirror[definition]	61
A.28	Tabular representation of NXmoderator[definition]	62
A.29	Tabular representation of NXmonitor[definition]	63
A.30	Tabular representation of NXmonochromator[definition]	64
A.31	Tabular representation of NXnote[definition]	64
A.32	Tabular representation of NXorientation[definition]	65
A.33	Tabular representation of NXparameters[definition]	66
A.34	Tabular representation of NXpolarizer[definition]	66
A.35	Tabular representation of NXpositioner[definition]	67
A.36	Tabular representation of NXprocess[definition]	68
A.37	Tabular representation of NXroot[definition]	68
A.38	Tabular representation of NXsample[definition]	69
A.39	Tabular representation of NXsensor[definition]	72
A.40	Tabular representation of NXshape[definition]	74
A.41	Tabular representation of NXsource[definition]	75
A.42	Tabular representation of NXtranslation[definition]	76
A.43	Tabular representation of NXuser[definition]	77
A.44	Tabular representation of NXvelocity_selector[definition]	77
A.45	Tabular representation of NXarchive[definition]	78
A.46	Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXarchive[definition])	79
A.47	Tabular representation of user[NXuser] (within entry[NXentry])	79
A.48	Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])	80
A.49	Tabular representation of [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])	80
A.50	Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])	80
A.51	Tabular representation of NXgisas[definition]	81
A.52	Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXgisas[definition])	81
A.53	Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])	82
A.54	$Tabular\ representation\ of\ source[NX source]\ (within\ instrument[NX instrument]) \qquad \dots $	82
A.55	$Tabular\ representation\ of\ monochromator[NXmonochromator]\ (within\ instrument[NXinstrument]) \qquad . \ . \ . \ . \ .$	83
A.56	$Tabular\ representation\ of\ detector[NX detector]\ (within\ instrument[NX instrument])\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\$	83
A.57	Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])	83
A.58	Tabular representation of control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])	83
A.59	Tabular representation of NXiqproc[definition]	84
A.60	Tabular representation of [NXentry] (within NXiqproc[definition])	84
A.61	Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within [NXentry])	85
A.62	Tabular representation of [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])	85
A.63	Tabular representation of [NXsample] (within [NXentry])	85
A.64	Tabular representation of reduction[NXprocess] (within [NXentry])	85

A.65 Tabular representation of input[NXparameters] (within reduction[NXprocess])	86
A.66 Tabular representation of [NXdata] (within [NXentry])	86
A.67 Tabular representation of NXmonopd[definition]	87
A.68 Tabular representation of [NXinstrument] (within NXmonopd[definition])	87
A.69 Tabular representation of [NXsource] (within [NXinstrument])	87
A.70 Tabular representation of [NXcrystal] (within [NXinstrument])	88
A.71 Tabular representation of [NXdetector] (within [NXinstrument])	88
A.72 Tabular representation of [NXsample] (within NXmonopd[definition])	88
A.73 Tabular representation of [NXmonitor] (within NXmonopd[definition])	88
A.74 Tabular representation of NXrefscan[definition]	89
A.75 Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXrefscan[definition])	89
A.76 Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])	90
A.77 Tabular representation of [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])	90
A.78 Tabular representation of monochromator[NXmonochromator] (within instrument[NXinstrument])	90
A.79 Tabular representation of [NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])	90
A.80 Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])	91
A.81 Tabular representation of control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])	91
A.82 Tabular representation of NXreftof[definition]	91
A.83 Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXreftof[definition])	92
A.84 Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])	92
$A.85 \ \ Tabular \ representation \ of \ chopper[NXdisk\_chopper] \ (within \ instrument[NXinstrument]) \ . \ . \ . \ . \ . \ . \ . \ . \ . \ $	92
A.86 Tabular representation of detector[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])	93
A.87 Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])	93
A.88 Tabular representation of control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])	93
A.89 Tabular representation of NXsas[definition]	94
A.90 Tabular representation of [NXentry] (within NXsas[definition])	94
A.91 Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within [NXentry])	95
A.92 Tabular representation of source[NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])	95
A.93 Tabular representation of monochromator[NXmonochromator] (within instrument[NXinstrument])	95
A.94 Tabular representation of collimator[NXcollimator] (within instrument[NXinstrument])	96
A.95 Tabular representation of geometry[NXgeometry] (within collimator[NXcollimator])	96
A.96 Tabular representation of shape[NXshape] (within geometry[NXgeometry])	96
A.97 Tabular representation of detector[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])	96
A.98 Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within [NXentry])	97
A.99 Tabular representation of control[NXmonitor] (within [NXentry])	97
A.100Tabular representation of NXscan[definition]	98
A.101 Tabular representation of [NXentry] (within NXscan[definition])	98
A.102 Tabular representation of [NXinstrument] (within [NXentry])	98
<u> </u>	

A.106Tabular representation of NXtas[definition] A.107Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtas[definition]) A.108Tabular representation of [NXisource] (within entry[NXentry]) 100 A.108Tabular representation of [NXisource] (within [NXinstrument]) 101 A.110Tabular representation of monochromator[NXcrystal] (within [NXinstrument]) 102 A.110Tabular representation of analyzen[NXcrystal] (within [NXinstrument]) 103 A.111Tabular representation of analyzen[NXcrystal] (within [NXinstrument]) 104 A.112Tabular representation of [NXtedector] (within [NXinstrument]) 105 A.113Tabular representation of [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 106 A.114Tabular representation of [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 107 A.116Tabular representation of NXtofraw[definition] 108 A.116Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtofraw[definition]) 109 A.116Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within entry[NXentry]) 100 A.119Tabular representation of [NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 101 A.119Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within entry[NXentry]) 103 A.120Tabular representation of [NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 104 A.120Tabular representation of [NXinonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 105 A.121Tabular representation of [NXinonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 106 A.122Tabular representation of [NXinonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 107 A.123Tabular representation of [NXinonitor] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 108 A.124Tabular representation of [NXinonitor] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 109 A.125Tabular representation of [NXinonitor] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 100 A.126Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument]) 101 A.127Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument]) 102 A.128Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 103 A.129Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 104 A.131Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 106 A.131Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 107 A.131Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 108 A.131Tabul	A.104Tabular representation of [NXsample] (within [NXentry])
A.107 Tabular representation of entry[Nxentry] (within NXtas[delinition]) 100 A.108 Tabular representation of [NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 100 A.109 Tabular representation of [NXsource] (within [NXinstrument]) 100 A.110 Tabular representation of innochromator[NXcrystal] (within [NXinstrument]) 100 A.111 Tabular representation of analyzer[NXcrystal] (within [NXinstrument]) 101 A.112 Tabular representation of [NX detector] (within [NXinstrument]) 101 A.113 Tabular representation of [NX detector] (within [NXinstrument]) 101 A.114 Tabular representation of [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 102 A.115 Tabular representation of NXtofraw[definition] 103 A.116 Tabular representation of the entry[Nxentry] (within entry[Nxentry]) 103 A.117 Tabular representation of the entry[Nxentry] (within entry[Nxentry]) 103 A.117 Tabular representation of the entry[Nxentry] (within entry[Nxentry]) 103 A.118 Tabular representation of the entry[Nxentry] (within entry[Nxentry]) 104 A.119 Tabular representation of the entry[Nxentry] (within entry[Nxentry]) 104 A.120 Tabular representation of Nxionample] (within entry[Nxentry]) 104 A.121 Tabular representation of Nxionample] (within entry[Nxentry]) 105 A.122 Tabular representation of Nxionample] (within entry[Nxentry]) 106 A.124 Tabular representation of intry[Nxentry] (within Nxionample] (within entry[Nxentry]) 106 A.125 Tabular representation of intry[Nxionample] (within instrument[Nxinstrument]) 107 A.126 Tabular representation of intry[Nxionample] (within instrument[Nxinstrument]) 107 A.127 Tabular representation of instrument[Nxinstrument] 107 A.128 Tabular representation of instrument[Nxinstrument] 107 A.129 Tabular representation of instrument[Nxinstrument] 107 A.129 Tabular representation of instrument[Nxinstrument] 107 A.129 Tabular representation of instrument[Nxinstrument] 107 A.131 Tabular representation of sample[Nxinstrument] 107 A.132 Tabular representation of sample[Nxinstrument] 107 A.133 Tabular representation of sample[Nxinstrument] 107 A.134 Tabular represen	A.105 Tabular representation of [NXmonitor] (within [NXentry])
A.108 Tabular representation of [NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 100 A.109 Tabular representation of monochromatof(NXerystal] (within [NXinstrument]) 101 A.111 Tabular representation of monochromatof(NXerystal] (within [NXinstrument]) 101 A.112 Tabular representation of analyzer[NXerystal] (within [NXinstrument]) 101 A.113 Tabular representation of [NXdetector] (within [NXinstrument]) 101 A.114 Tabular representation of [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 101 A.114 Tabular representation of [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 102 A.115 Tabular representation of NXtofraw[definition] 103 A.116 Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within entry[NXentry]) 103 A.116 Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within entry[NXentry]) 103 A.118 Tabular representation of vaer[NXuser] (within entry[NXentry]) 103 A.119 Tabular representation of NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 104 A.120 Tabular representation of Six in the entry (within [NXinstrument]) 104 A.121 Tabular representation of [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) 104 A.122 Tabular representation of [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 105 A.123 Tabular representation of NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 106 A.124 Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 106 A.125 Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 106 A.125 Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 107 A.125 Tabular representation of bright, field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 107 A.126 Tabular representation of bright, field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 107 A.127 Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 108 A.130 Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 108 A.131 Tabular representation of bright, field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 108 A.132 Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) 108 A.133 Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (wi	A.106Tabular representation of NXtas[definition]
A.109 Tabular representation of [NXsource] (within [NXinstrument]) 100 A.110 Tabular representation of monochromator[NXcrystal] (within [NXinstrument]) 101 A.111 Tabular representation of analyzer[NXcrystal] (within [NXinstrument]) 101 A.111 Tabular representation of [NXdetector] (within [NXinstrument]) 101 A.113 Tabular representation of [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) 101 A.114 Tabular representation of [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) 102 A.115 Tabular representation of [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 103 A.116 Tabular representation of NXtofraw[definition] 103 A.117 Tabular representation of user[NXuser] (within entry[NXentry]) 103 A.118 Tabular representation of user[NXuser] (within entry[NXentry]) 103 A.118 Tabular representation of [INXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 104 A.120 Tabular representation of [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 104 A.121 Tabular representation of NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 104 A.122 Tabular representation of NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 105 A.123 Tabular representation of NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 106 A.124 Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 106 A.125 Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 107 A.126 Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 107 A.127 Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 107 A.128 Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 107 A.128 Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 107 A.129 Tabular representation of sample[NXinstrument] 108 A.130 Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 108 A.131 Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 108 A.132 Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 108 A.133 Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 108 A.134 Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 108 A.135 Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 108 A.136 Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 108 A.137 Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrume	A.107Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtas[definition])
A.110Tabular representation of monochromator[NXcrystal] (within [NXinstrument]) 101 A.111Tabular representation of analyzer[NXcrystal] (within [NXinstrument]) 101 A.112Tabular representation of [NXdetector] (within [NXinstrument]) 101 A.112Tabular representation of [NXdetector] (within entry[NXentry]) 101 A.114Tabular representation of [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 102 A.115Tabular representation of [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 102 A.115Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtofraw[definition] 103 A.115Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within entry[NXentry]) 103 A.117Tabular representation of sert[NXuser] (within entry[NXentry]) 103 A.118Tabular representation of [NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 104 A.119Tabular representation of flxisample] (within entry[NXentry]) 104 A.120Tabular representation of [NXinsmile] (within entry[NXentry]) 104 A.121Tabular representation of [NXinsmile] (within entry[NXentry]) 105 A.122Tabular representation of NXtomo[definition] 105 A.123Tabular representation of NXtomo[definition] 105 A.124Tabular representation of intrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 106 A.125Tabular representation of intrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 106 A.125Tabular representation of intrument[NXinstrument] 107 A.126Tabular representation of intrument[NXinstrument] 107 A.127Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 107 A.128Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 108 A.130Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 108 A.131Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 108 A.132Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 108 A.133Tabular representation of of ark_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 108 A.133Tabular representation of of myln (within entry[NXentry]) 108 A.134Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 108 A.135Tab	A.108 Tabular representation of [NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])
A.111 Tabular representation of analyzer[NXcrystal] (within [NXinstrument]) 101 A.112 Tabular representation of [NXdetector] (within [NXinstrument]) 101 A.113 Tabular representation of [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) 102 A.114 Tabular representation of [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 102 A.115 Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within entry[NXentry]) 103 A.116 Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtofraw[definition]) 103 A.117 Tabular representation of suser[NXuser] (within entry[NXentry]) 103 A.118 Tabular representation of elector[NXdetector] (within entry[NXentry]) 103 A.119 Tabular representation of [NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 104 A.119 Tabular representation of [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) 104 A.120 Tabular representation of [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) 105 A.122 Tabular representation of [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 105 A.122 Tabular representation of NXtomo[definition] 105 A.123 Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 106 A.124 Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 106 A.125 Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 107 A.126 Tabular representation of pinglicial[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 107 A.127 Tabular representation of Sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 107 A.128 Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 108 A.129 Tabular representation of Sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 108 A.130 Tabular representation of Sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 108 A.131 Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 108 A.132 Tabular representation of Sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 108 A.133 Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 108 A.134 Tabular representation of Sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 108 A.135 Tabular representation of Sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 108 A.136 Tabular representatio	A.109Tabular representation of [NXsource] (within [NXinstrument])
A.112Tabular representation of [NXdetector] (within [NXinstrument]) 101 A.113Tabular representation of [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) 102 A.114Tabular representation of [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 102 A.115Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within entry[NXentry]) 103 A.116Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtofraw[definition]) 103 A.117Tabular representation of user[NXuser] (within entry[NXentry]) 103 A.118Tabular representation of sert[NXuser] (within entry[NXentry]) 103 A.119Tabular representation of [NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 104 A.120Tabular representation of [NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 104 A.120Tabular representation of [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) 105 A.122Tabular representation of [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 105 A.122Tabular representation of Nxtomo[definition] 105 A.123Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 106 A.124Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 106 A.125Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 107 A.126Tabular representation of bright_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 107 A.127Tabular representation of Sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 107 A.128Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 107 A.129Tabular representation of Sample[Nxsample] (within entry[Nxentry]) 108 A.130Tabular representation of Sample[Nxsample] (within entry[Nxentry]) 108 A.131Tabular representation of bright_field[Nxinstrument] (within entry[Nxentry]) 108 A.131Tabular representation of bright_field[Nxinstrument] 107 A.135Tabular representation of bright_field[Nxinstrument] 108 A.135Tabular representation of bright_field[Nxinstrument] 108 A.135Tabular representation of bright_field[Nxinstrument] 108 A.136Tabular representation of bright_field[Nxinstrument] 108 A.137Tabular representation of bright_field[Nxinstrument] 110 A.137Tabular representation of bright_field[Nxinstrument] 11	A.110Tabular representation of monochromator[NXcrystal] (within [NXinstrument])
A.113Tabular representation of [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) 101 A.114Tabular representation of NXtofraw[definition] 103 A.115Tabular representation of NXtofraw[definition] 103 A.116Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtofraw[definition]) 103 A.117Tabular representation of user[NXuser] (within entry[NXentry]) 103 A.118Tabular representation of SNXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 104 A.119Tabular representation of detector[NXdetector] (within [NXinstrument]) 104 A.120Tabular representation of MXtomol(definition) 105 A.121Tabular representation of [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) 104 A.122Tabular representation of [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 105 A.122Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomol(definition]) 105 A.123Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomol(definition]) 106 A.124Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 106 A.125Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 107 A.126Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 107 A.127Tabular representation of dark_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 107 A.128Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 108 A.130Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within entry[NXentry]) 108 A.131Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 108 A.131Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 108 A.133Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 108 A.134Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 108 A.135Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 108 A.135Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 108 A.136Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 108 A.137Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 108 A.138Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument] 108 A.138Tabular representation of sample[NXinstrument] 118 A.138Tabular representation of sample[NXinstrument] 119 A.139Tabular representation o	A.111 Tabular representation of analyzer[NXcrystal] (within [NXinstrument])
A.114Tabular representation of [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])  A.115Tabular representation of NXtofraw[definition]  A.116Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtofraw[definition])  A.117Tabular representation of user[NXuser] (within entry[NXentry])  A.118Tabular representation of user[NXuser] (within entry[NXentry])  A.118Tabular representation of [NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])  A.119Tabular representation of elector[NXdetector] (within [NXinstrument])  A.120Tabular representation of [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])  A.121Tabular representation of [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])  A.122Tabular representation of NXtomo[definition]  A.123Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomo[definition])  A.124Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])  A.125Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])  A.126Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument]  A.126Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument]  A.127Tabular representation of bright_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.128Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.129Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.130Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])  A.131Tabular representation of ontrol[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])  A.132Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument]  A.133Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument]  A.134Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument]  A.135Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument]  A.136Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument]  A.137Tabular representation of single[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.136Tabular representation of single[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.137Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.138Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrum	A.112Tabular representation of [NXdetector] (within [NXinstrument])
A.115Tabular representation of NXtofraw[definition] 103 A.116Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtofraw[definition]) 103 A.117Tabular representation of user[NXuser] (within entry[NXentry]) 103 A.118Tabular representation of [NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 104 A.119Tabular representation of [NXinstrument] (within [NXinstrument]) 104 A.120Tabular representation of detector[NXdetector] (within [NXinstrument]) 105 A.121Tabular representation of [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) 105 A.122Tabular representation of [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 105 A.122Tabular representation of NXtomo[definition] 105 A.123Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomo[definition]) 106 A.124Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 106 A.125Tabular representation of [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 107 A.126Tabular representation of bright_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 107 A.127Tabular representation of dark_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 107 A.128Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 108 A.129Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within entry[NXentry]) 108 A.130Tabular representation of of control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 108 A.131Tabular representation of of ontrol[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 108 A.131Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 109 A.132Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 109 A.133Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 109 A.134Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 109 A.135Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 109 A.136Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 109 A.137Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 109	A.113 Tabular representation of [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])
A.116Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtofraw[definition])  A.117Tabular representation of user[NXuser] (within entry[NXentry])  A.118Tabular representation of [NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])  A.119Tabular representation of [NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])  A.119Tabular representation of detector[NXdetector] (within [NXinstrument])  A.120Tabular representation of [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])  A.121Tabular representation of [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])  A.122Tabular representation of NXtomo[definition]  A.123Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomo[definition])  A.124Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])  A.125Tabular representation of [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.126Tabular representation of pright_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.128Tabular representation of dark_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.128Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])  A.129Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])  A.130Tabular representation of of control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])  A.131Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument])  A.132Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument])  A.132Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument])  A.133Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument]  A.134Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument]  A.135Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument]  A.136Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument]  A.137Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument]  A.137Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.138Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument]  A.139Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument]  A.139Tabular representation of ontrol[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])  A.130Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument]  A.130Tabular representation of ontrol[NXmonitor] (within instrument[N	A.114Tabular representation of [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])
A.117Tabular representation of user[NXuser] (within entry[NXentry]) 103 A.118Tabular representation of [NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 104 A.119Tabular representation of detector[NXdetector] (within [NXinstrument]) 104 A.120Tabular representation of [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) 105 A.121Tabular representation of [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 105 A.122Tabular representation of NXtomo[definition] 105 A.123Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomo[definition]) 106 A.124Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 106 A.125Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 107 A.126Tabular representation of bright_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 107 A.127Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 107 A.128Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within entry[NXentry]) 108 A.130Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) 108 A.131Tabular representation of control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 108 A.131Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 109 A.132Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 109 A.133Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 109 A.134Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 109 A.135Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 109 A.136Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 109 A.137Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 109 A.137Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 110 A.137Tabular representation of one of instrument[NXinstrument] 111 A.137Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 111 A.139Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 111 A.130Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 111 A.130Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 11	A.115 Tabular representation of NXtofraw[definition]
A.118Tabular representation of [NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 104 A.119Tabular representation of detector[NXdetector] (within [NXinstrument]) 104 A.120Tabular representation of [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) 105 A.121Tabular representation of [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 105 A.122Tabular representation of NXtomo[definition] 105 A.123Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomo[definition]) 106 A.124Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 106 A.125Tabular representation of [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 107 A.126Tabular representation of bright_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 107 A.127Tabular representation of dark_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 107 A.128Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 108 A.129Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 108 A.130Tabular representation of NXtomophase[definition] 108 A.131Tabular representation of control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 108 A.132Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomophase[definition]) 109 A.133Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 109 A.134Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 110 A.135Tabular representation of bright_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 111 A.136Tabular representation of bright_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 111 A.137Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) 111 A.138Tabular representation of of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) 111 A.138Tabular representation of	A.116Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtofraw[definition])
A.119Tabular representation of detector[NXdetector] (within [NXinstrument]) 104 A.120Tabular representation of [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) 105 A.121Tabular representation of [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 105 A.122Tabular representation of NXtomo[definition] 105 A.123Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomo[definition]) 106 A.124Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 106 A.125Tabular representation of [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 107 A.126Tabular representation of bright_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 107 A.127Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 107 A.128Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 108 A.129Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within entry[NXentry]) 108 A.130Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) 108 A.131Tabular representation of Nxtomophase[definition] 109 A.131Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 109 A.133Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 109 A.134Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 110 A.136Tabular representation of bright_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 111 A.136Tabular representation of dark_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 111 A.137Tabular representation of sample[Nxdetector] (within instrument[Nxinstrument]) 111 A.138Tabular representation of sample[Nxsample] (within entry[Nxentry]) 111 A.138Tabular representation of sample[Nxsample] (within instrument[Nxinstrument]) 111 A.139Tabular representation of sample[Nxsample] (within entry[Nxentry]) 111 A.139Tabular representation of sample[Nxsample] (within entry[Nxentry]) 111 A.139Tabular representation of ontrol[Nxmonitor] (within entry[Nxentry]) 112 A.140Tabular representation of ontrol[Nxmonitor] (within entry[Nxentry]) 112 A.141Tabular representation of ontrol[Nxmonitor] (within entry[Nxentry]) 112 A.141Tabular representation of ontrol[Nxmonitor	A.117Tabular representation of user[NXuser] (within entry[NXentry])
A.120Tabular representation of [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])  A.121Tabular representation of [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])  A.122Tabular representation of NXtomo[definition]  A.123Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomo[definition])  A.124Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])  A.125Tabular representation of [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.126Tabular representation of bright_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.127Tabular representation of dark_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.128Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.129Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.130Tabular representation of sample[Nxsample] (within entry[NXentry])  A.131Tabular representation of NXtomophase[definition]  A.132Tabular representation of NXtomophase[definition]  A.133Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])  A.134Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])  A.135Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.136Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.137Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.138Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.136Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.137Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.138Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.139Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within entry[NXentry])  A.139Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within entry[NXentry])  A.140Tabular representation of ontrol[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])  A.141Tabular representation of ontrol[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])	A.118Tabular representation of [NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])
A.121 Tabular representation of [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])  A.122 Tabular representation of NXtomo[definition]  A.123 Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomo[definition])  A.124 Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])  A.125 Tabular representation of [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.126 Tabular representation of bright_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.127 Tabular representation of ark_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.128 Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.129 Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])  A.130 Tabular representation of control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])  A.131 Tabular representation of NXtomophase[definition]  A.132 Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomophase[definition])  A.133 Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])  A.134 Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])  A.135 Tabular representation of first (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.136 Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.137 Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.137 Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])  A.139 Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])  A.140 Tabular representation of ontry[NXentry] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.141 Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within entry[NXentry])  A.141 Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within entry[NXentry])	A.119Tabular representation of detector[NXdetector] (within [NXinstrument])
A.122Tabular representation of NXtomo[definition] 105 A.123Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomo[definition]) 106 A.124Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 106 A.125Tabular representation of [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 107 A.126Tabular representation of bright_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 107 A.127Tabular representation of dark_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 107 A.128Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 108 A.129Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) 108 A.130Tabular representation of control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 108 A.131Tabular representation of NXtomophase[definition] 109 A.132Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomophase[definition]) 109 A.134Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 109 A.134Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] 110 A.135Tabular representation of bright_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 110 A.136Tabular representation of dark_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 111 A.137Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 111 A.137Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 111 A.139Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 111 A.139Tabular representation of control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 112 A.140Tabular representation of NXtomoproc[definition] 112 A.141Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomoproc[definition]) 112 A.141Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomoproc[definition]) 112 A.141Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomoproc[definition]) 112	A.120Tabular representation of [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])
A.123Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomo[definition])  A.124Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])  A.125Tabular representation of [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.126Tabular representation of bright_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.127Tabular representation of dark_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.128Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.129Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])  A.130Tabular representation of control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])  A.131Tabular representation of NXtomophase[definition]  A.132Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomophase[definition])  A.133Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])  A.134Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])  A.135Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.136Tabular representation of bright_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.137Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.138Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])  A.139Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])  A.139Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])  A.130Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])	A.121 Tabular representation of [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])
A.124Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])	A.122 Tabular representation of NXtomo[definition]
A.125 Tabular representation of [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])	A.123 Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomo[definition])
A.126 Tabular representation of bright_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 107 A.127 Tabular representation of dark_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 108 A.128 Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 108 A.129 Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) 108 A.130 Tabular representation of control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 108 A.131 Tabular representation of NXtomophase[definition] 109 A.132 Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomophase[definition]) 109 A.133 Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 109 A.134 Tabular representation of [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 110 A.135 Tabular representation of bright_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 111 A.137 Tabular representation of dark_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 111 A.138 Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) 111 A.139 Tabular representation of control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 112 A.140 Tabular representation of NXtomoproc[definition] 112 A.141 Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomoproc[definition]) 112	A.124 Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])
A.127Tabular representation of dark_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 107 A.128Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 108 A.129Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) 108 A.130Tabular representation of control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 108 A.131Tabular representation of NXtomophase[definition] 109 A.132Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomophase[definition]) 109 A.133Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) 109 A.134Tabular representation of [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 110 A.135Tabular representation of bright_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 111 A.136Tabular representation of dark_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 111 A.137Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) 111 A.138Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) 111 A.139Tabular representation of control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) 112 A.140Tabular representation of NXtomoproc[definition] 112 A.141Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomoproc[definition]) 112	A.125 Tabular representation of [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])
A.128Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])	A.126Tabular representation of bright_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])
A.129Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])  A.130Tabular representation of control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])  A.131Tabular representation of NXtomophase[definition]  A.132Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomophase[definition])  A.133Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])  A.134Tabular representation of [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.135Tabular representation of bright_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.136Tabular representation of dark_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.137Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])  A.138Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])  A.139Tabular representation of control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])  A.140Tabular representation of NXtomoproc[definition]  A.141Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomoproc[definition])  112	A.127 Tabular representation of dark_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])
A.130 Tabular representation of control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])	A.128 Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])
A.131 Tabular representation of NXtomophase[definition]	A.129Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])
A.132Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomophase[definition])	A.130Tabular representation of control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])
A.133 Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])	A.131 Tabular representation of NXtomophase[definition]
A.134Tabular representation of [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])	A.132 Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomophase[definition])
A.135 Tabular representation of bright_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])	A.133Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])
A.136Tabular representation of dark_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])	A.134 Tabular representation of [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])
A.137Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])	$A.135 Tabular\ representation\ of\ bright\_field[NX detector]\ (within\ instrument[NX instrument])\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\$
A.138Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])	A.136Tabular representation of dark_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])
A.139Tabular representation of control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])	A.137Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])
A.140 Tabular representation of NX tomoproc [definition]	A.138Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])
A.141 Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomoproc[definition])	A.139Tabular representation of control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])
	A.140Tabular representation of NXtomoproc[definition]
A.142Tabular representation of [NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])	A.141 Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomoproc[definition])
	A.142Tabular representation of [NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])

A.143 Tabular representation of [NXsource] (within [NXinstrument])
A.144Tabular representation of [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])
A.145 Tabular representation of reconstruction[NXprocess] (within entry[NXentry])
A.146Tabular representation of parameters[NXparameters] (within reconstruction[NXprocess])
A.147Tabular representation of data[NXdata] (within entry[NXentry])
A.148Tabular representation of NXxbase[definition]
A.149Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXxbase[definition])
A.150Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])
A.151 Tabular representation of source[NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])
A.152Tabular representation of monochromator[NXmonochromator] (within instrument[NXinstrument])
A.153Tabular representation of detector[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])
A.154Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])
A.155 Tabular representation of control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])
A.156Tabular representation of NXxeuler[definition]
A.157Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXxeuler[definition])
A.158Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])
A.159Tabular representation of detector[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])
A.160Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])
A.161 Tabular representation of NXxkappa[definition]
A.162 Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXxkappa[definition])
A.163 Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])
A.164Tabular representation of detector[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])
A.165 Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])
A.166Tabular representation of NXxnb[definition]
A.167Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXxnb[definition])
A.168Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])
A.169Tabular representation of detector[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])
A.170Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])
A.171 Tabular representation of NXxrot[definition]
A.172Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXxrot[definition])
A.173 Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])
A.174Tabular representation of detector[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])
A.175Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])

## **Preface**



#### Note

This documentation is in transition from the NeXus wiki site to DocBook. Simultaneously, NeXus is introducing the NeXus Definition Language (NXDL) to define base classes and application definitions. Parts of the manual may still need revision to conform to the NXDL.

NeXus is a data storage format designed and intended for storage of data from experiments and analyses in the fields of neutron, muon, and X-ray science. The files are portable, self describing, extendable, and the software to read and write the files (the API) is in the public domain. There are four levels to the NeXus Standard:

- 1. Physical File format and API for accessing Files
- 2. Rules for storing data in Files
- 3. Component and application definitions
- 4. NeXus Utilities

Each of these levels is described in this manual. Chapter ZZ describes the physical file format. Section 2.1.2 describes the API while Chapter 5 goes into more detail. Chapter ZZ describes the rules for storing data in Files. Appendix A describes the component and application definitions. Chapter ZZ describes the NeXus Utilities.

## **Chapter 1**

## **Purpose of NeXus definitions**

By the early 1990s, several groups of scientists in the fields of neutron and X-ray science had recognized a common and troublesome pattern in the data acquired at various scientific instruments and user facilities. Each of these instruments and facilities had a locally defined format for recording experimental data. With lots of different formats, much of the scientists' time was being wasted in the task of writing import readers for processing and analysis programs. As is common, the exact information to be documented from each instrument in a data file evolves, such as the implementation of new high-throughput detectors. Many of these formats lacked the generality to extend to the new data to be stored, thus another new format was devised. In such environments, the documentation of each generation of data format is often lacking.

In 1994, scientists from three institutions<sup>1</sup> independently proposed methods to store data using a self-describing, extensible format that was already in broad use in other scientific disciplines. The proposals were brought together to form NeXus.

## 1.1 Simple plotting

An important motivation for the design of NeXus was to simplify the creation of a default plot view. While the best representation of a set of observations will vary, depending on various conditions, a good suggestion is often known *a priori*. This suggestion is described in the NXdata element so that any program that is used to browse NeXus data files can provide a *best representation* without request for user input.

## 1.2 Unified format for reduction and analysis

Another important motivation for NeXus, indeed the *raison d'etre*, was the community need to analyze data from different user facilities. By the late 1980s, it had become common practice for a scientific instrument or facility to define its own data format, often at the convenience of the local computer system. Data from these facilities were not easily interchanged due to various differences in computer systems and the compression schemes of binary data. It was necessary to contact the facility to obtain a description so that one could write an import routine in software. Experience with facilities closing (and subsequent lack of access to information describing the facility data format) revealed a significant limitation with this common practice.

**Self-description**, combined with a reliance on a **multi-platform** (and thereby **portable**) data storage format, were valued components of a data storage format where the longevity of the data was expected to be longer than the lifetime of the facility at which it was acquired. As the name implies, self-description within data files is the practice where the structure of the information contained within the file is evident from the file itself. A multi-platform data storage format must faithfully represent the data identically on a variety of computer systems, regardless of the bit order or byte order or word size native to the computer.

The scientific community continues to grow the various types of data to be expressed in data files. This practice is expected to continue as part of the investigative process. To gain broad acceptance in the scientific user community, any data storage format

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>Jon Tischler and Mitch Nelson (Oak Ridge National Laboratory, USA), Przemek Klosowski, (National Institute of Standards and Technology, USA), and Mark Koennecke (Paul Scherer Institute, Switzerland)

proposed as a standard would need to be **extendable** and continue to provide a means to express the latest notions of scientific data.

The maintenance cost of common data structures meeting the motivations above (self-describing, portable, and extendable) is not insurmountable but is often well-beyond the research funding of individual members of the muon, neutron, and X-ray science communities. Since it is these members that drive the selection of a data storage format, it is necessary for the user cost to be as minimal as possible. In this case, experience has shown that the format must be in the **public-domain** for it to be commonly accepted as a standard. A benefit of the public-domain aspect is that the source code for the API is open and accessible, a point which has received notable comment in the scientific literature.

At its beginnings, the founders of NeXus identified the Hierarchical Data Format (HDF), initially from the National Center for Supercomputing Applications (NCSA) at the University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign (UIUC) and later spun off into its own group called The HDF Group (THG),<sup>2</sup> as a multi-platform data storage format with capacity for conveying large data payloads and a substantial user community. HDF (now HDF5) was provided with software to read and write data (this is the application-programmer interface, or API) using a large number of computing systems in common use for neutron and X-ray science. HDF is a binary data file format that supports compression and structured data.

More recently, NeXus has recognized that part of the scientific community with a desire to write and record scientific data, has small data volumes and a large aversion to the requirement of a complicated API necessary to access data in binary files such as HDF. For such information, the NeXus API has been extended by the addition of the eXtensible Markup Language<sup>3</sup> (XML) as an alternative to HDF. XML is a text-based format that supports compression and structured data and has broad usage in business and e-commerce. While possibly complicated, XML files are human readable, and tools for translation and extraction are plentiful. The API has routines to read and write XML data and to convert between HDF and XML.

## 1.3 Defined Dictionary

A necessary feature of a standard for the interchange of scientific data is a *defined dictionary* (or *lexicography*) of terms. This dictionary declares the expected spelling and meaning of terms when they are present so that it is not necessary to search for all the variant forms of *energy* when it is used to describe data (e.g., E, e, keV, eV, nrg, ...).

NeXus recognized that each scientific specialty has developed a unique dictionary and needs to categorize data using those terms. The NeXus Application Definitions provide the means to document the lexicography for use in data files of that scientific specialty.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>The HDF Group: http://www.hdfgroup.org/

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup>XML: http://www.w3.org/XML/. There are many other descriptions of XML, for example: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/XML

## **Chapter 2**

## MediaWiki Manual

## 2.1 NeXus Introduction

In recent years, a number of scientists and computer programmers working in neutron and synchrotron facilities around the world came to the conclusion that a common data format would fulfil a valuable function in the scattering community. As instrumentation becomes more complex and data visualization become more challenging, individual scientists, or even institutions, have found it difficult to keep up with new developments. A common data format makes it easier, both to exchange experimental results and to exchange ideas about how to analyze them. It promotes greater cooperation in software development and stimulate the design of more sophisticated visualization tools. For additional background information see the chapter titled "Brief history of the NeXus format."

This section is designed to give a brief introduction to NeXus, the data format that has been developed in response to these needs. It explains what a modern data format such as NeXus is and how to write simple programs to read and write NeXus files.

#### 2.1.1 What is NeXus?

The NeXus data format has four components:

A set of subroutines to make it easy to read and write NeXus files.

A set of design principles to help people understand what is in them.

A set of instrument definitions to allow the development of more portable analysis software.

A set of low-level file formats to actually store NeXus files on physical media.

## 2.1.1.1 A Set of Subroutines

In the past, a data format was defined by a document describing the precise location of every item in the data file, either as row and column numbers in an ASCII file, or as record and byte numbers in a binary file. In modern data formats, such as NeXus, the user does not need to know where the data are stored, just what they are called. It is the job of the subroutine library to retrieve the data.

For example, in NeXus, a program to read in the wavelength of an experiment would contain lines similar to the following:

### Example 2.1 Simple example of reading data

```
NXopendata (fileID, "wavelength");
NXgetdata (fileID, lambda);
NXclosedata (fileID);
```

In this example, the program requests the value of the data that has the label wavelength, storing the result in the variable lambda. fileID is a file identifier that is provided by NeXus when the file is opened.

We shall provide a more complete example when we have discussed the contents of the NeXus files.

#### 2.1.1.2 A Set of Design Principles

NeXus data files contain two types of entity: data items and data groups.

**Data Items** These can be scalar values or multidimensional arrays of a variety of sizes (1-byte, 2-byte, 4-byte, 8-byte) and types (characters, integers, floats). Extra information required to describe a particular data item, such as the data units, can be stored as a data attribute.

**Data Groups** These are like folders that can contain a number of data items and/or other groups.

In fact, a NeXus file can be viewed as a computer file system. Just as files are stored in folders (or subdirectories) to make them easy to locate, so NeXus data items are stored in groups. The group hierarchy is designed to make it easy to navigate a NeXus file.

### 2.1.1.2.1 Example of a NeXus File

The following diagram shows an example of a NeXus file represented as a tree structure.

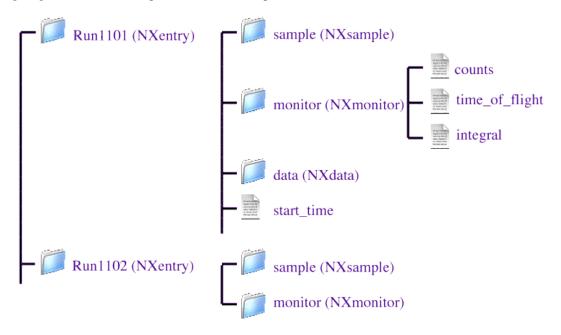


Figure 2.1: Example of a NeXus file

Note that each data item is identified by a name, e.g., counts, but each group is identified both by a name and, in parentheses, a class identifier, e.g., monitor (NXmonitor). The class names, which all begin with NX, define the sort of data items that the group should contain, in this case, counts from a beamline monitor. The hierarchical design, with data items nested in groups, makes it easy to identify information if you are browsing through a file.

## 2.1.1.2.2 Important Classes

Here are some of the important classes found in nearly all NeXus files. A complete list can be found in the NeXus Design section

**NXentry** The top level of any NeXus file contains one or more groups with the class NXentry. These contain all the data that is required to describe an experimental run or scan. Each NXentry typically contains a number of groups describing sample information (class NXsample), instrument details (class NXinstrument), and monitor counts (class NXmonitor).

**NXdata** Each NXentry group contains one or more groups with class NXdata. These groups contain the experimental results in a self-contained way, i.e., it should be possible to generate a sensible plot of the data from the information contained in each NXdata group. That means it should contain the axis labels and titles as well as the data.

**NXsample** A NXentry group will often contain a group with class NXsample. This group contains information pertaining to the sample, such as its chemical composition, mass, and environment variables (temperature, pressure, magnetic field, etc.).

**NXinstrument** There might also be a group with class NXinstrument. This is designed to encapsulate all the instrumental information that might be relevant to a measurement, such as flight paths, collimations, chopper frequencies, etc.

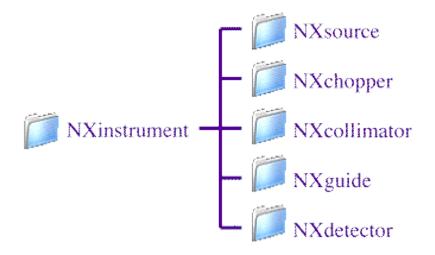


Figure 2.2: NXinstrument excerpt

Since an instrument can comprise several beamline components each defined by several parameters, they are each specified by a separate group. This hides the complexity from generic file browsers, but makes the information available in an intuitively obvious way if it is required.

## 2.1.1.2.3 Simple Example

NeXus data files do not need to be complicated. In fact, the following diagram shows an extremely simple NeXus file that could be used to transfer data between programs.



Figure 2.3: Simple Example

This illustrates the fact that the structure of NeXus files is extremely flexible. It can accommodate very complex instrumental information, if required, but it can also be used to store very simple data sets.

#### 2.1.1.3 A Set of Instrument Definitions

If the design principles are followed, it will be easy for anyone browsing a NeXus file to understand what it contains, without any prior information. However, if you are writing visualization or analysis software, you will need to know precisely what information is contained in advance. For that reason, NeXus provides a way of defining the format for particular instrument types, e.g., time-of-flight small angle neutron scattering. This requires some agreement by the relevant communities, but would allow the development of much more portable software.

These instrument definitions are being formalized as XML files, using a specially devised syntax that specifies the names of data items, and whether they are optional or required. The following is an example of such a file for the simple NeXus file shown above.

## Example 2.2 verysimple.xml: A very simple NeXus file

```
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
  <!--
2
  URL: http://www.neutron.anl.gov/nexus/xml/simple.xml
3
4
  Editor: Ray Osborn <ROsborn@anl.gov>
  A very simple NeXus file
6
8
   <NXentry name="{Name of entry}">
9
      <NXdata name="{Name of data}">
10
11
        <time_of_flight units="microseconds" type="NX_FLOAT32[i]">{Time-of-flight}</ \leftarrow
            time_of_flight>
        <data type="NX_INT32[i]" axes="time_of_flight"> {Counts} </data>
12
      </NXdata>
13
14
   </NXentry>
```

If you want to define the format of a particular type of NeXus file for your own use, e.g. as the standard output from a program, you are encouraged to "publish" the format using this XML format.

## 2.1.1.4 A Set of Low-Level File Formats

To actually store NeXus files on physical media, different low-level file formats are available, namely HDF4, HDF5, and XML. The NeXus library may be configured to support all of them, or any nonempty subset. Applications that create NeXus files need to decide (or let the user decide) in which low-level format data shall be stored. Generic data analysis applications should be able to read any low-level format.

### 2.1.2 The NeXus Application Programming Interface (API)

The NeXus API consists of routines to read and write NeXus data files.

#### 2.1.2.1 How do I write a NeXus file?

The NeXus Application Program Interface (API) provides a set of subroutines that make it easy to read and write NeXus files. These subroutines are available in C, Fortran 77, Fortran 90, Java, and IDL. Access from other languages, such as Python, is anticipated in the near future. It is also possible to read NeXus files in a number of data analysis tools, such as LAMP, ISAW, and Open GENIE.

The API uses a very simple "state" model to navigate through a NeXus file. When you open a file, the API provides a file "handle", which then stores the current location, i.e. which group and/or data item is currently open. Read and write operations then act on the currently open entity. In the following, we walk through some parts of a typical NeXus program written in C. See the NeXus API chapter for a more complete version.

First, it is necessary to open the file, specifying whether we want read or write access.

## Example 2.3 Open a file

```
#include "napi.h"

int main()
{
   NXhandle fileID;
   NXopen ('NXfile.nxs', NXACC_CREATE, &fileID);
```

The file is opened with "create" access (implying write access), and the API returns a file identifier of type NXhandle. Next, we create an NXentry group to contain the scan using NXmakegroup and then open it for access using NXopengroup.

## Example 2.4 Create an entry

```
NXmakegroup (fileID, "Entry", "NXentry");
NXopengroup (fileID, "Entry", "NXentry");
```

The plottable data is contained within an NXdata group, which must also be created and opened.

## Example 2.5 Create data group

```
NXmakegroup (fileID, "Data", "NXdata");
NXopengroup (fileID, "Data", "NXdata");
```

To create a data item, call NXmakedata, specifying the data name, type (NX\_FLOAT32), rank (in this case, 1), and length of the array (n\_t). Then, it can be opened for writing.

## Example 2.6 Create data array

```
NXmakedata (fileID, "time_of_flight", NX_FLOAT32, 1, &n_t);
NXopendata (fileID, "time_of_flight")
```

Then write the data using NXputdata.

## Example 2.7 Write the data

```
NXputdata (fileID, t);
```

With data item is still open, we can also add some data attributes, such as the data units, which are specified as a character string (type NX\_CHAR) that is 12 bytes long.

### Example 2.8 Add an attribute

```
NXputattr (fileID, "units", "microseconds", 12, NX_CHAR);
```

Then we close the data item before opening another. In fact, the API will do this automatically if you attempt to open another data item, but it is better style to close it yourself.

## Example 2.9 Close the data array

```
NXclosedata (fileID);
```

The remaining data items in this group are added in a similar fashion. Note that the indentation whenever a new data item or group are opened is just intended to make the structure of the NeXus file more transparent.

## Example 2.10 The rest of the data group

```
NXmakedata (fileID, "polar_angle", NX_FLOAT32, 1, &n_p);
          NXopendata (fileID, "polar_angle");
2
            NXputdata (fileID, polar_angle);
            NXputattr (fileID, "units", "degrees", 7, NX_CHAR);
          NXclosedata (fileID);
          dims[0] = n_t;
6
          dims[1] = n_p;
          NXmakedata (fileID, "counts", NX_INT32, 2, dims);
8
          NXopendata (fileID, "counts");
9
            NXputdata (fileID, counts);
10
          NXclosedata (fileID);
```

Finally, close the groups (NXdata and NXentry) before closing the file itself.

## Example 2.11 Cleanup

```
NXclosegroup (fileID);
NXclosegroup (fileID);
NXclose (&fileID);
return;
}
```

#### 2.1.2.2 How do I read a NeXus file?

Reading a NeXus file is almost identical to writing one. Obviously, it is not necessary to call NXmakedata since the item already exists, but it is necessary to call one of the query routines to find out the rank and length of the data before allocating an array to store it.

Here is part of a program to read the time-of-flight array from the file created by the example above.

### **Example 2.12** File read example

```
NXopen ('NXfile.nxs', NXACC_READ, &fileID);

NXopengroup (fileID, "Entry", "NXentry");

NXopengroup (fileID, "Data", "NXdata");

NXopendata (fileID, "time_of_flight");

NXgetinfo (fileID, &rank, dims, &datatype);

NXmalloc ((void **) &tof, rank, dims, datatype);

NXgetdata (fileID, tof);

NXclosedata (fileID);

NXclosegroup (fileID);

NXclose (fileID);

NXclose (fileID);
```

NeXus files can also be viewed by a command-line browser, NXbrowse, which is included with the NeXus API. The following is an example session of using NXbrowse to view a data file from the LRMECS spectrometer at IPNS. The following commands are used (see the NXbrowse web pag ):

Table 2.1: NXbrowse Command Description

Command	Description
dir	List the contents of the current group
open Histogram1	Open the NeXus group "Histogram1"
read title	Print the contents of the NeXus data labelled "title"
close	Close the current group
quit	Quit the browser

## Example 2.13 Using NXbrowse

```
%> nxbrowse lrcs3701.nxs
   NXBrowse 3.0.0. Copyright (C) 2000 R. Osborn, M. Koennecke, P. Klosowski
       NeXus\_version = 1.3.3
5
       file_name = lrcs3701.nxs
       file_time = 2001-02-11 00:02:35-0600
6
       user = EAG/RO
   NX> dir
    NX Group : Histogram1 (NXentry)
9
    NX Group : Histogram2 (NXentry)
10
  NX> open Histogram1
12
  NX/Histogram1> dir
    NX Data : title[44] (NX_CHAR)
13
    NX Data : analysis[7] (NX_CHAR)
14
    NX Data : start_time[24] (NX_CHAR)
15
    NX Data : end_time[24] (NX_CHAR)
16
    NX Data : run_number (NX_INT32)
17
    NX Group : sample (NXsample)
18
    NX Group : LRMECS (NXinstrument)
19
    NX Group : monitor1 (NXmonitor)
20
21
     NX Group: monitor2 (NXmonitor)
22
    NX Group : data (NXdata)
  NX/Histogram1> read title
23
    title[44] (NX_CHAR) = MgB2 PDOS 43.37g 8K 120meV E0@240Hz T0@120Hz
24
  NX/Histogram1> open data
25
  NX/Histogram1/data> dir
26
    NX Data : title[44] (NX_CHAR)
27
    NX Data : data[148,750] (NX_INT32)
28
     NX Data : time_of_flight[751] (NX_FLOAT32)
29
              : polar_angle[148] (NX_FLOAT32)
    NX Data
30
31
  NX/Histogram1/data> read time_of_flight
     time_of_flight[751] (NX_FLOAT32) = [ 1900.000000 1902.000000 1904.000000 ...]
32
       units = microseconds
33
       long_name = Time-of-Flight [microseconds]
  NX/Histogram1/data> read data
35
    data[148,750] (NX_INT32) = [ 1 1 0 ...]
36
       units = counts
37
       signal = 1
38
       long_name = Neutron Counts
39
       axes = polar_angle:time_of_flight
40
  NX/Histogram1/data> close
  NX/Histogram1> close
  NX> quit
```

The source code provides an example of how to write a NeXus reader. The test programs included in the NeXus API may also be useful to study.

## 2.1.3 NeXus Mailing Lists

to be written - pull it from the wiki at http://www.nexusformat.org/Mailing\_Lists

## 2.1.4 Where to go from here?

The other sections of this document give much more detailed descriptions of the NeXus data format.

NeXus Design This describes NeXus' hierarchical design, and gives more information on how to construct valid groups.

NeXus API This describes the NeXus programming interface, with lists of all the subroutines and supported languages

**NeXus Mailing Lists** NeXus mailing lists

## 2.2 NeXus Design

The structure of NeXus files is extremely flexible, allowing the storage both of simple data sets, e.g., a single data array and its axes, and also of highly complex data, e.g., the simulation results of an entire multi-component instrument. This flexibility is achieved through a hierarchical structure, with related data items collected together into groups, making NeXus files easy to navigate, even without any documentation. NeXus files are self-describing, and should be easy to understand, at least by those familiar with the experimental technique.

The logical design is distinct from the underlying format used to store the NeXus file on disk, which are written using the NeXus Application Program Interface (API). Refer to the API section for more details.

## 2.2.1 NeXus Objects

NeXus data files contain two types of elementary object: data items and data groups. In addition, metadata required to describe a data item, e.g. its physical units, can be attached to the data as data attributes.

### 2.2.1.1 Data Items

Data items contain the essential information stored in a NeXus file. They can be scalar values or multidimensional arrays of a variety of sizes (1-byte, 2-byte, 4-byte, 8-byte) and types (integers, floats, characters). The items may store both experimental results (counts, detector angles, etc), and other information associated with the experiment (start and end times, user names, etc). Data items are identified by their names, which must be unique within the group in which they are stored.

## 2.2.1.2 Data Attributes

Attributes are extra (meta-)information that are associated with particular data items. They are used to annotate the data, e.g. with physical units or calibration offsets, and may be scalar numbers or character strings. In addition, NeXus uses attributes to identify plottable data and their axes, etc. Finally, NeXus files themselves have global attributes that identify the NeXus version, file creation time, etc.. Attributes are identified by their names, which must be unique in each data item.

### 2.2.1.3 Data Groups

NeXus files consist of data groups, which contain data items and/or other groups to form a hierarchical structure. This hierarchy is designed to make it easy to navigate a NeXus file by storing related data items together. Data groups are identified both by a name, which must be unique within a particular group, and a class. There can be multiple groups with the same class.

NeXus Manual

#### 2.2.2 NeXus Classes

Data groups often describe objects in the experiment (monitors, detectors, monochromators, etc.), so that the contents (both data items and/or other data groups) comprise the properties of that object. NeXus has defined a set of standard objects, or classes, out of which a NeXus file can be constructed. Each data group is therefore identified by a name and a class. The group class, which always has "NX" as a prefix, defines the type of object and the properties that it can contain, whereas the group name defines a unique instance of that class. These classes are defined in XML using the NeXus Definition Language (NXDL) format.

Not all classes define physical objects. Some refer to logical groupings of experimental information, such as plottable data, sample environment logs, beam profiles, etc.

The following table shows the hierarchy of a standard NeXus file, and where groups of a particular class are located. There can be multiple instances of each class. On the other hand, a typical NeXus file will only contain a small subset of the possible classes.

#### 2.2.2.1 NeXus Data

One NeXus design aim was to make it possible to separate the measured data in a NeXus file from all the metadata that describe how that measurement was performed. In principle, it should be possible for a plotting utility to identify the plottable data automatically (or to provide a list of choices if there is more than one set of data). In order to distinguish the actual measurements from this metadata, it is stored separately in groups with the class NXdata. These groups encapsulate all the information required to produce a meaningful plot, including any error arrays and axis scales, i.e. the physical values corresponding to the data dimensions.

The NXdata groups have to be flexible enough to cope with data of arbitrary rank and provide a mechanism for associating axis scales with the appropriate dimension of data. We use data attributes to accomplish this. Here are the main rules that must be followed in constructing an NXdata group.

- Each NXdata group will consist of only one data set containing plottable data and their standard deviations.
- The data set will be identified by an attribute of "signal" given a value 1.
- This data set may be of arbitrary rank.

If available, the standard deviations of the data are to be stored in a data set of the same rank and dimensions, with the name "errors".

- For each data dimension, there should be a one-dimensional array of the same length.
- These one-dimensional arrays are the "dimension scales" of the data i.e. the values of the independent variables at which the data is measured e.g. scattering angle or energy transfer.

There are two methods of linking each data dimension to its respective dimension scale.

1. The first method is to define an attribute of each dimension scale called "axis". It is an integer whose value is the number of the dimension, in order of fastest varying dimension. i.e. if the array being stored is data, with elements data[j][i] in C and data(i,j) in Fortran, where i is the time-of-flight index and j is the polar angle index, the NXdata group would contain .

## Example 2.14 Old way of denoting axes

This attribute must be defined for each dimension scale.

2. The second method is to define an attribute of the data itself called "axes". It contains the names of each dimensions scale as a comma- or colon-delimited list in the order they appear in C. Optionally, the list can be enclosed in brackets, but should not contain any spaces, e.g.

## Example 2.15 Preferred way of denoting axes

The second method is required when the dimension scale is used in more than one NXdata group in a different context, e.g. it is used as the x-axis in one group and the y-axis in another.

The first method was historically the first to be used, but the second is now recommended for future applications. However, both will be supported in NeXus utilities that identify dimension scales, e.g. NXUfindaxis.

There are limited circumstances in which more than one dimension scale for the same data dimension can be included in the same NXdata group. The most common is when they are the three components of an (hkl) scan. In order to handle this case, we have defined another attribute of type integer called "primary" whose value determines the order in which the scale is expected to be chosen for plotting, i.e. 1st choice: primary = 1 2nd choice: primary = 2 etc. If there is more than one scale with the same value of the "axis" attribute, one of them must have the "primary" attribute set to 1. Defining the "primary" attribute for the other scales is optional.

N.B. The "primary" attribute can only be used with the first method of defining dimension scales discussed above. In addition to the signal data, this group could contain a data set of the same rank and dimensions called "errors" containing the standard deviations of the data.

It is often (usually) necessary to associate the data and/or axis scales with other metadata stored in other groups, e.g. the NXsample group or components of the NXinstrument group. For example, it may be necessary to perform corrections for the detector efficiency using information stored in the associated NXdetector group. In this case, it is recommended that the relevant arrays are initially stored in those groups, and then linked to the NXdata group. The API will provide a mechanism for identifying the parent group so that the relevant metadata can be accessed.

Here is a simple example to illustrate the concept:

#### Example 2.16 Abbreviated NeXus file

```
<NXentry name="entry">
       <NXsample name="sample">
2
           <magnetic_field link="/entry/sample">10.0</magnetic_field>
       </NXsample>
       <NXinstrument name="instrument">
           <NXdetector name="detector">
                <data axes=" time_of_flight:magnetic_field " link="/entry/instrument/detector"> \leftrightarrow
                    5 7 14 etc </data>
                <time_of_flight link="/entry/instrument/detector ">1500.0 1502.0 1504.0 etc </ \leftrightarrow
                   time_of_flight>
           </NXdetector>
       </NXinstrument>
10
11
       <NXdata>
12
           <data axes="time_of_flight:magnetic_field" link="/entry/instrument/detector">{link ←
               to values in NXdetector}</data>
13
           <time_of_flight link="/entry/instrument/detector">{link to values in NXdetector}</ \hookleftarrow
               time_of_flight>
           <magnetic_field link="/entry/sample">{link to values in NXsample}/magnetic_field>
14
       </NXdata>
15
   </NXentry>
```

The general principle is that physical quantites are stored in the groups that they refer to (e.g. counts in NXdetector, temperature in NXsample) and these quantities are then linked into NXdata for interpretation. In this example, there are two axis scales, "magnetic\_field" and "time\_of\_flight", which are stored in NXsample and NXdetector groups respectively. A program is able to use the information in the "link" attribute to locate the respective groups. One corollary of this is that there should be one NXdetector group for each NXdata group, e.g. one for each detector bank in a multi-bank instrument.

The syntax of the "link" attribute requires a bit of explanation. Under HDF4 you can only create, what would be called under UNIX, "hard links". Hard links have the characteristics that:

- The name of the entity must be the same in both the original and linked groups
- The attributes of both the original entity and the linked one are the same
- You cannot distinguish the original entity from the linked one
- You cannot follow a link it is like an inode in a filesystem and just points at the data

To overcome this and allow us to link from NXdata to, say, NXsample and to know that the original data belongs to NXsample we write the "link" attribute that contains the path of the original group containing it. All linked entities will share this "link" attribute and thus can use it to locate the original source group. We are effectively using the "link" attribute to simulate "symbolic links". So in the above example both the original "time\_of\_flight" and the linked one will share a link attribute containing the text "/entry/instrument/detector" because "/entry/instrument/detector/time\_of\_flight" is the original instance.

#### 2.2.2.2 NeXus Attributes

Table 2.2: Global Attributes

Name	Туре	Description
file name	NX_CHAR	File name of original NeXus file to assist in identification if the external
me_name		name has been changed
file_time	ISO 8601	Date and time of file creation
file_update_time	ISO 8601	Date and time of last file change at close
NeXus_version	NX_CHAR	Version of NeXus API used in writing the file
creator	NX_CHAR	Facility or program where the file originated

Table 2.3: Data Attributes

Name	Туре	Description
units	NX_CHAR	Data units, given as character strings, must conform to the NeXus units
		standard. See the "NeXus units" section for details.
signal	NX INT32	Defines which data set contains the signal to be plotted - set to 1 for main
		signal
		Defines the names of the dimension scales for this data set as a
		comma-delimited array, optionally surrounded by brackets (see a longer
axes N		discussion in the section on NXdata structure) i.e. if the array being stored is
	NX_CHAR	data, with elements data[j][i] in C and data(i, j) in Fortran, with
		<pre>dimension scales time_of_flight[i] and polar_angle[j], data</pre>
		would have an attribute called "axes" with the following value:
		[polar_angle,time_of_flight]
axis		As an alternative to using the "axes" attribute, this defines the rank of the
		signal data for which this data set is a dimension scale in order of the fastest
	NX INT32	varying index (see a longer discussion in the section on NXdata structure) i.e.
	NA_INT32	if the array being stored is data, with elements data[j][i] in C and
		data(i, j) in Fortran, "axis" would have the following values: ith
		dimension (axis = $1$ ), jth dimension (axis = $2$ ), etc.
	NIV INIT22	Defines the order of preference for dimension scales which apply to the same
primary	primary NX_INT32	rank of signal data - set to 1 for preferred dimension scale

Name	Туре	Description
long_name	NX_CHAR	Defines title of signal data or axis label of dimension scale
calibration_status	NX_CHAR	Defines status of data value - set to "Nominal" or "Measured"
histogram_offset	NX_FLOAT32	Defines the offset from the first data point to its bin boundary. i.e. left_bin =
		data[1] - histogram_offset - set to 0 if the data are not histograms. The points
		themselves should be set to the bin centers. For reasoning behind this design,
		see note on histograms.
checksum	NX_INT32	Sum of data array acting as a check on data integrity
version 1	NX_CHAR	Version of XML DTD file or schema on which the NeXus file is based.
		Should only be used with the "analysis" data item in an NXentry group.
URL	NX_CHAR	The URL of the XML DTD file or schema on which the NeXus file is based.
UKL		Should only be used with the "analysis" data item in an NXentry group.

## 2.2.3 NeXus Coordinate System

Nexus provides two coordinate systems: a NXgeometry based system for physical coordinates of beamline components and a polar coordinate based system for scattering coordinates. The usage of these two systems can be seen by considering a <sup>3</sup>He gas tube detector:

- The NXgeometry system represents true spatial location and would describe a cylinder at a certain distance from the sample that never changes from one run to another
- The polar system would describe the scattering, rather than actual, geometry. For example, the *distance* coordinate would refer to the distance from the sample to an effective measurement point within the gas tube, which would depend on neutron energy; lower energy neutrons would tend to penetrate a smaller distance within the tube, and so have a shorter secondary flight path.

## 2.2.3.1 Simple (Spherical Polar) Coordinate System

In this system the instrument is considered as a set of components through which the incident beam passes. The variable **distance** is assigned to each component and represents the effective beam flight path length between this component and the sample. A sign convention is used where -ve numbers represent components pre-sample and +ve numbers components post-sample.

For angular information, the quantities  $polar\_angle$  and  $azimuthal\_angle$  are used and these quantities correspond exactly to the usual spherical polar coordinate definitions i.e. the polar\\_angle is the zenith angle and measured with respect to a z axis and the azimuthal\\_angle to the x axis in the xy plane. The direction of these local axes may be different for each component: z is the incident beam direction for the **previous** component and we then follow McStas for x and y i.e. the x axis is perpendicular to the beam in the horizontal plane pointing left as seen from the source, and the y axis points upwards (see diagram below). The z axis thus represents the direction of the beam if it was un-deviated by the previous component, and so the polar\_angle and azimuthal\_angle for a component indicate how much the beam was bent/scattered by the previous component.

If we consider an NXdetector element placed directly after an NXsample, the z axis would be in the direction of the beam incident on NXsample. The polar\_angle for the NXdetector would be the angle between the scattered beam and this z axis and so correspond to the *Bragg angle* or *two theta* even for out-of-plane scattering. The azimuthal\_angle would be the angle between the positive x-axis and the scattered beam projected onto the xy-plane - scattering to the left as seen from the source would have azimuthal\_angle=0 and scattering to the right azimuthal\_angle=pi. The distance would correspond to what is often called the *secondary flight path length* or L2.

#### 2.2.3.2 NXgeometry based system

This coordinate system is based more fully on the McStas coordinate system. The instrument is given a global, absolute coordinate system where the z axis points in the direction of the incident beam, the x axis is perpendicular to the beam in the horizontal plane pointing left as seen from the source, and the y axis points upwards. Each beamline component also has a local coordinate system, which is defined by the NXgeometry object. The local z direction for a component is taken as the incident

beam direction, with *x* and *y* defined as before (*i.e.* the *x* axis is perpendicular to the beam in the horizontal plane pointing left as seen from the source, and the *y* axis points upwards). Information about these coordinate systems and the placement of components is described by the NXgeometry class via its NXtranslation and NXorientation members.

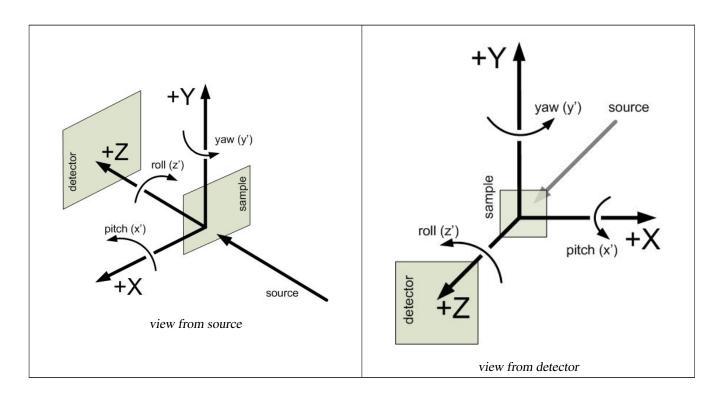


Figure 2.4: Definition of translation and orientation geometry

When computing a transformation, NXtranslation is applied before NXorientation. All of our axes are right handed and orthogonal. Orientation information is stored as direction cosines. The direction cosines will be between the local coordinate directions and the reference directions (to origin or relative NXgeometry). Calling the local unit vectors (x',y',z') and the reference unit vectors (x,y,z) the six numbers will be [x' dot x, x' dot y, x' dot z, y' dot y, y' dot z] where "dot" is the scalar dot product (cosine of the angle between the unit vectors). The unit vectors in both the local and reference coordinates are right-handed and orthonormal: with this restriction we only ned to store 6 rather than 9 direction cosines as the z' axis can be obtained by the vector cross product of x' and y'.

The origin of coordinates is arbitrary, but all components in the file must either agree on its absolutelocation or use relative positioning. To allow for this generality, an origin member can be defined in NXentry; its use will be detailed shortly.

We choose as our absolute the origin the scattering center, which is where a perfectly aligned sample would be. Note that the centre of the sample itself may not always be at this point if the sample is being scanned across the beam. With an origin at the *scattering centre* the spherical polar coordinate specifications of the detector positions conveniently relates to scattering angles and lengths for direct geometry instruments.

Individual components of the instrument (e.g. jaws) will have their own set of local axes (x,y,z) which will be fixed to their body in a way defined by their shape. These local axes will probably not coincidewith the global instrument axes and so a set of rotation angles will also need to be stored. For this an NXgeometry class is defined, along with NXtranslation and NXorlentation; the hope is to provide a method sufficiently general for relating the location of any object with respect to another object. The mechanism also allows for specifying one position relative to another component: a NeXus file link is made in one instance of an NXgeometry object to another NXgeometry object and a program can then traverse the chain of links to calculate an absolute position.

NeXus does not need to define absolutely where to place the *origin*. All components can instead bedeclared with a relative position that ultimately follows a chain back to one object; this will be named *origin1*, be of class NXgeometry and a member of NXentry. The real space location of this origin is chosen for convenience and should be mentioned in the description attached to origin1. If the origin is taken at the sample, then sample.geometry.distance will always be (0,0,0) relative to

origin1; if the origin is taken elsewhere this will not be so, but everything will still work. It may be convenient to define extra origins (similar to *arms* in *McStas*) at other parts of the instrument. For example, defining one at the centre of a circular array of detectors would allow their positions to be conveniently specified in spherical polar coordinates. Another possibility would be to define the sample relative to *origin1* and the detectors to *origin2*; the detectors could then be rotated by a rotation of *origin2* without modifying NXdetector.

As well as specifying the component location, it is also necessary to specify the beam direction. Unless otherwise given in an NXbeam member of the component, the incident beam is assumed to be travelling along (0,0,+z) in the coordinate system of the object (or origin) our position was defined relative to. Thus, for a component with absolute positioning the beam will always be in the incident beam direction unless specified by an NXbeam member.

## Size and Shape (NXshape)



#### Warning

Need some editing at this point!

Many instrument components define height and width variables to specify their size when rectangular, a radius variable for when circular etc. Rather than all these different names, an alternative scheme is proposed based on the shape of the object and the local coordinate axes this shape defines. All object would just need to specify a shape (cuboid, cylinder etc.) and a size array. Specifying size[3] would give the dimensions of the object along its local (+-x,+-y,+-z) axes; specifying size[6] would give the extent along (+x,+y,+z,-x,-y,-z) and allow for e.g. asymmetric jaws where the reference point may not be the centre of the rectangle. For example take shape=cylinder: the NXtranslation variable of position would define the location of the reference point for the origin of the local axes: z in the direction of the cylinder axis, x and y in plane. With no rotation the object would be oriented with its local axes pointing in the direction of axes of the object it was defined relative to, but this can be altered with the NXorientation variable within position. If a size[3] array variable was specified, the reference point must be the centre of the cylinder and the dimension are size[0]=size[1]=radius, size[2]=length/2). If size[6] was specified then the reference point would be elsewhere in the object, with its distance from the cylinder edges along the various axes given by elements of the size[6] array.

### 2.2.4 NeXus units

NeXus units are written as a string (NX\_CHAR) and describe the engineering units. The string should be appropriate for the value. Values for the NeXus units must be specified in a format compatible with Unidata UDunits. The UDunits specification also includes instructions for derived units. <sup>1 2</sup> utility (in particular, see the now-deprecated udunits.txt). At present, the content of the NeXus units attribute is not validated.

## 2.2.5 NeXus array dimensions

Here are a couple of examples to get this section started:

## Example 2.17 Example of array dimensions.

In some programming language, this would make data[i,j,k] and time-of-flight[k+1].

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>Unidata UDunits: http://www.unidata.ucar.edu/software/udunits/

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>udunits.txt (deprecated): http://www.unidata.ucar.edu/software/udunits/udunits-1/udunits.txt

## 2.2.6 NeXus Data Types

placeholder

## 2.3 NeXus Instruments

The NeXus Design page lists the group classes from which a NeXus file is constructed. They provide the glossary of items that could, in principle, be stored in a standard-conforming NeXus file (other items may be inserted into the file if the author wishes, but they won't be part of the standard). If you are going to include a particular piece of metadata, consult the class definitions to find out what to call it. However, to assist those writing data analysis software, it is useful to provide more than a glossary; it is important to define the required contents of NeXus files that contain data from particular classes of neutron, x-ray, or muon instrument.

As part of the NeXus standard, we have identified a number of generic instruments that describe an appreciable number of existing instruments around the world. Although not identical in every detail, they share enough common characteristics, and more importantly, they require sufficiently similar modes of data analysis, to make a standard description useful. They are in the process of being defined for the NeXus standard. The definitions will be in XML using the NeXus Definition Language (NXDL) format.

## 2.4 Frequently Asked Questions

This is a list of commonly asked questions concerning the NeXus data format.

1. How many facilities use NeXus?

This is continually evolving. It has been used as the instrument format for several years on some or all instruments at a number of facilities including PSI (Switzerland), LLB (France), LANSCE (USA), and APS (USA). It will be used on all future instrumentation at ISIS (UK), NIST (USA), and ANSTO (Australia). Finally, it has been formally adopted by major facilities under construction, the SNS (USA), JPARC (Japan) and Diamond Light Source (UK).

2. NeXus files are only useful for archiving instrumental data, aren't they?

NeXus files can be used to store both extremely simple data, e.g. a single (x,y) array, and highly complex instrument descriptions. In fact, the original intention of the NeXus data format was to provide a way of interchanging data between facilities and their user communities. However, the power of NeXus hierarchical design has led to its adoption as a standard archiving format by several major facilities, such as ISIS, LANSCE, and the SNS.

3. Why aren't NXsample and NXmonitor groups stored in the NXinstrument group?

A NeXus file can contain a number of NXentry groups, which may represent different scans in an experiment, or sample and calibration runs, etc. In many cases, though by no means all, the instrument has the same configuration so that it would be possible to save space by storing the NXinstrument group once and using multiple links in the remaining NXentry groups. It is assumed that the sample and monitor information would be more likely to change from run to run, and so should be stored at the top level.

4. How do I identify the plottable data?

Any program whose aim is to identify plottable data should use the following procedure:

- (a) Open the first top level NeXus group with class NXentry.
- (b) Open the first NeXus group with class NXdata.
- (c) Loop through NeXus data items in this group searching for the item with attribute "signal" =1. This is the plottable data.
- (d) Check to see if this data item has an attribute called "axes". If so, the names are defined as a comma-delimited string within this attribute in the C-order of the data array, and you can skip the next two steps.
- (e) If the "axes" attribute is not defined, search for the one-dimensional NeXus data items with attribute "primary" = 1.

- (f) These are the dimension scales to label the axes of each dimension of the data.
- (g) Link each dimension scale to the respective data dimension by the "axis" attribute (= 1,2,...,rank of data).
- (h) If necessary, close the NXdata group, open the next one and repeat steps 3 to 6.
- (i) If necessary, close the NXentry group, open the next one and repeat steps 2 to 7.

Consult the NeXus API section, which describes the routines available to program these operations. In the course of time, generic NeXus browsers will provide this functionality automatically.

5. Why are the NeXus classes so complicated? I'll never store all that information

The NeXus classes are essentially glossaries of terms. If you need to store a piece of information, consult the class definitions to see if it has been defined. If so, use it. However, it is not compulsory to include every item that has been defined if it is not relevant to your experiment. On the other hand, if there is a NeXus definition for your instrument, you are recommended to include all the compulsory items if you want to use standard software to analyze your data.

6. I want to produce an application definition. How do I go about it?

Read the NXDL Tutorial. If you encounter any problems because the classes are not sufficient to describe your configuration, please contact the NIAC Executive Secretary explaining the problem, and post a suggestion at the relevant class wiki page. The NIAC is always willing to consider proposals to amend the base classes. The procedures are defined in the NIAC constitution.<sup>3</sup>

#### Note

We might copy the tutorial into this document or at least post the PDF on the WWW and link to it from here. The latter is probably the better option.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup>Refer to the most recent version of the NIAC constitution on the NIAC wiki: http://www.nexusformat.org/NIAC

## **Chapter 3**

## **Generic features of NeXus files**

## 3.1 Links

This is a paragraph.

## 3.2 Linking data to detectors

This is a paragraph.

## 3.3 Monitors as a special kind of data

This is a paragraph.

## **Chapter 4**

## Verification and validation of files

The intent of verification and validation of files is to ensure, in an unbiased way, that a given file conforms to the relevant specifications. NeXus uses various automated tools to validate files. These tools include conversion of content from HDF to XML and transformation (via XSLT) from XML format to another such as NXDL, XSD, and Schematron. This chapter will first provide an overview of the process, then define the terms used in validation, then describe how multiple base classes or application definitions might apply to a given NeXus data file, and then describe the various validation techniques in more detail. Validation does not check that the data content of the file is sensible; this requires scientific interpretation based on the technique.

Validation is useful to anyone who manipulates or modifies the contents of NeXus files. This includes scientists/users, instrument staff, software developers, and those who might mine the files for metadata. First, the scientist or user of the data must be certain that the information in a file can be located reliably. The instrument staff or software developer must be confident the information they have written to the file has been located and formatted properly. At some time, the content of the NeXus file may contribute to a larger body of work such as a metadata catalog for a scientific instrument, a laboratory, or even an entire user facility.

## 4.1 Overview

NeXus files adhere to a set of rules and can be tested against these rules for compliance. The rules are implemented using standard tools and can themselves be tested to verify compliance with the standards for such definitions. Validation includes the testing of both NeXus data files and the NXDL specifications that describe the rules.

## NeXus data files

NeXus data files (also known as NeXus data file instances) are validated to ensure the various parts of the data file are arranged according to the governing NXDL specifications used in that file instance.

### NeXus Definition Language (NXDL) specification files

NXDL files are validated to ensure they adhere to the rules for writing NeXus base classes and application definitions.

## 4.2 Definitions of these terms

This is a paragraph.

## 4.3 NeXus data files may use multiple base classes or application definitions

This is a paragraph.

# 4.4 Validation techniques

Describe the tools used to validate files from the user's perspective and then from the software developer's perspective.

#### 4.4.1 Overview

This is a paragraph.

#### 4.4.2 Validation of NeXus data files

Each NeXus data file can be validated against the NXDL rules. (The full suite of NXDL specifications is converted into Schematron rules by an XSLT transformation and then combined into a single file. It is not allowed to have a NeXus base class and also an application definition with the same name since one will override the other in the master Schematron file) The validation is done using Schematron and the NXvalidate program. Schematron was selected, rather than XML Schema (XSD), to permit established rules for NeXus files, especially the rule allowing the nodes within NXentry to appear in any order.

#### Note

It is very important to describe what is and is not being validated.

First, the NeXus data file instance (either HDF or XML) is converted

### 4.4.3 Validation of NeXus Definition Language (NXDL) specification files

Each NXDL file must be validated against the rules that define how NXDL files are to be arranged. The rules are specified in the form of XML Schema (XSD).

#### 4.4.4 Schematron

This is a paragraph.

#### 4.4.5 Transformation of NXDL files to Schematron

This is a paragraph.

# **Chapter 5**

# The NeXus Application-Program Interface

# 5.1 Description of the NeXus Application-Program Interface

The NeXus API was written to shield (and hide) the complexity of the HDF API from scientific programmers and users of the NeXus Data Standard.

# **Chapter 6**

# The NeXus Definition Language

# 6.1 Description of the NeXus Definition Language

The intent of the NeXus Definition Language (NXDL) is to provide an easier, and rules-based method for defining a NeXus data file that is specific to either an instrument (where NeXus has been for years) or an area of scientific technique or analysis.

NeXus wiki page: NXDL1

NXDL is the new NeXus definition language - it will replace the Meta-DTD format<sup>2</sup> as the way for specifying the content of NeXus data files. NXDL is based on XML schema technology and follows on from provisional work on NeXus schema NeXus schema<sup>3</sup> in Summer 2008.

At NIAC 2008,<sup>4</sup> it was agreed that writing definitions directly as schema would probably be too verbose and instead a new language (NXDL) was devised that would then be translated into XML schema for eventual validation. The files written in the NXDL language are XML files in their own right and have an associated XML schema - this means a schema-aware XML editor can be used and accurate definition creation is much easier than it was with the old Meta-DTD.

For the latest NXDL definitions see the svn repository.<sup>5</sup>

An NXDL description will be a true (not pseudo) XML file which structure can be validated by a schema. See below for a draft example from the working repository. Since the NXDL specification is not complete, expect that some aspects of this example might change. NXDL is not intended to change the location of information stored in existing NeXus files, only to change (and simplify) the way the file would be arranged for a specific instance such as instrument or technique.

There are several different elements used in the NXDL. These are:

Table 6.1: Tabular representation of NXuser[definition]

Name and Attributes (Type)	Description (and Occurrences)
definition (XML root element)	Root element of an NXDL specification. This is the basic definition of a new type.
definition (AME foot element)	Components must derive from an existing type and optionally provide documentation.
@name()	required
<pre>@type(nx:definitionTypeAttr)</pre>	required
@extends()	optional
@restricts()	optional
@svnid()	optional
	A group element refers to the definition of an existing NX object: either a base class
group	(such as NXdata or NXgeometry), application definition, contributed definition, or a
	locally-defined component.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>http://www.nexusformat.org/NXDL

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>http://www.nexusformat.org/Metaformat

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup>http://www.nexusformat.org/Schema

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup>http://www.nexusformat.org/images/b/b2/NIAC2008\_minutes.pdf

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup>https://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk

Table 6.1: (continued)

Name and Attributes (Type)	Description (and Occurrences)	
field	A field declares a new element in the component being defined.	
doc	Items can be documented (but this documentation is not printed in the manual. It only appears in the NXDL file.)	
link	A link to another item.	
attribute	attribute of field	

#### Note

An application definition specifies the minimum set of data information (both data and metadata) for data analysis software.

#### 6.1.1 NXxrot.nxdl.xml: example NXDL specification

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
  <!--
2
  # NeXus - Neutron and X-ray Common Data Format
  # Copyright (C) 2008 NeXus International Advisory Committee (NIAC)
  # This library is free software; you can redistribute it and/or
  # modify it under the terms of the GNU Lesser General Public
  # License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either
  # version 2 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.
10
11
  # This library is distributed in the hope that it will be useful,
12
  # but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of
13
  # MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU
14
  # Lesser General Public License for more details.
15
16
17
   # You should have received a copy of the GNU Lesser General Public
   # License along with this library; if not, write to the Free Software
   # Foundation, Inc., 59 Temple Place, Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307
20
  # For further information, see http://www.nexusformat.org
21
22
  23
  # $Date: 2010-01-13 03:19:56 -0600 (Wed, 13 Jan 2010) $
24
  # $Author: Pete Jemian $
25
  # $Revision: 458 $
26
  # $HeadURL: https://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/applications/NXxrot.nxdl.xml $
27
  # $Id: NXxrot.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian $
28
  -->
30
  <definition name="NXxrot" extends="NXxbase" type="group"</pre>
31
32
    category="application"
    xmlns="http://definition.nexusformat.org/nxdl/3.1"
33
    xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
34
    xsi:schemaLocation="http://definition.nexusformat.org/nxdl/3.1 ../nxdl.xsd"
35
    version="1.0b"
36
37
     <doc>This is the application definition for raw data from a rotation camera. It extends
38
        NXxbase,
      so the full definition is the content of NXxbase plus the data defined here.</doc>
     <group type="NXentry" name="entry">
40
      <field name="definition">
```

```
<doc> Official NeXus DTD or NXDL schema to which this file conforms </doc>
42
         <enumeration>
43
           <item value="NXxrot"/>
         </enumeration>
45
       </field>
       <group type="NXinstrument" name="instrument">
         <group type="NXdetector" name="detector">
           <field name="polar_angle" type="NX_FLOAT" units="NX_ANGLE">
49
             <doc>The polar_angle (two theta) where the detector is placed.</doc>
50
           </field>
51
         </group>
52
       </group>
53
       <group type="NXsample" name="sample">
54
         <field name="rotation_angle" type="NX_FLOAT" units="NX_ANGLE"</pre>
55
56
           <doc>
             This is an array holding the sample rotation angle at each
             scan point
           </doc>
60
61
           <dimensions size="1">
             <dim index="1" value="np" />
62
           </dimensions>
63
         </field>
64
       </group>
65
       <group type="NXdata" name="name">
66
         <link name="rotation_angle" target="/NXentry/NXsample/rotation_angle"></link>
       </group>
     </group>
  </definition>
```

#### 6.1.2 nxdl.xsd source code

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
  <!--
2
  # $LastChangedDate: 2010-01-13 03:19:56 -0600 (Wed, 13 Jan 2010) $
  # $LastChangedBy: Pete Jemian $
  # $LastChangedRevision: 458 $
  # $HeadURL: https://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/nxdl.xsd $
  10
  <xs:schema xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"</pre>
11
    targetNamespace="http://definition.nexusformat.org/nxdl/3.1"
12
    xmlns:nx="http://definition.nexusformat.org/nxdl/3.1"
13
    version="$Id: nxdl.xsd 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian $"
14
    elementFormDefault="qualified">
15
16
17
    <xs:annotation>
      <xs:documentation>
18
        # NeXus - Neutron and X-ray Common Data Format
        # Copyright (C) 2008 NeXus International Advisory Committee (NIAC)
21
22
        # This library is free software; you can redistribute it and/or
23
        # modify it under the terms of the GNU Lesser General Public
24
        # License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either
25
        # version 2 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.
26
27
        # This library is distributed in the hope that it will be useful,
```

```
# but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of
29
        # MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU
30
        # Lesser General Public License for more details.
31
32
        \ensuremath{\sharp} You should have received a copy of the GNU Lesser General Public
        # License along with this library; if not, write to the Free Software
        # Foundation, Inc., 59 Temple Place, Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307 USA
36
        # For further information, see http://www.nexusformat.org
37
      </xs:documentation>
38
    </xs:annotation>
39
40
    41
42
43
    <xs:include schemaLocation="nxdlTypes.xsd">
44
      <xs:annotation>
45
        <xs:documentation>
          Definitions of the basic data types and unit types
47
          allowed in NXDL instance files.
48
        </xs:documentation>
      </xs:annotation>
49
    </xs:include>
50
51
    52
53
    <!-- define the document root element -->
    <xs:element name="definition" type="nx:definitionType" />
    57
    <xs:complexType name="definitionType">
59
      <xs:group ref="nx:groupGroup" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded" />
60
      <xs:attribute name="name" use="required" />
61
      <xs:attribute name="version" use="required" />
62
      <xs:attribute name="type" use="required" type="nx:definitionTypeAttr" />
63
      <xs:attribute name="extends" use="optional" />
64
      <xs:attribute name="restricts" use="optional" />
      <xs:attribute name="svnid" use="optional"/>
      <xs:attribute name="category" use="required">
67
        <xs:simpleType>
68
          <xs:restriction base="xs:string">
69
            <xs:enumeration value="base"/>
70
            <xs:enumeration value="application"/>
71
            <xs:enumeration value="contributed"/>
72
73
          </xs:restriction>
        </xs:simpleType>
74
      </xs:attribute>
75
    </xs:complexType>
    <xs:complexType name="attributeType">
78
      <xs:annotation>
79
        <xs:documentation>
80
          A new element may expect or require some attributes.
81
        </xs:documentation>
82
      </xs:annotation>
83
84
        <xs:element name="doc" type="nx:basicType" minOccurs="0" />
85
        <xs:element name="enumeration" type="nx:enumerationType"</pre>
          minOccurs="0">
88
          <xs:annotation>
            <xs:documentation>An enumeration specifies the values to be used./ \hookleftarrow
               xs:documentation>
```

```
</xs:annotation>
90
         </xs:element>
91
       </xs:sequence>
92
       <xs:attribute name="name" use="required" />
93
       <xs:attribute name="type" type="nx:primitiveType" default="NX_CHAR"/>
     </xs:complexType>
     <xs:simpleType name="definitionTypeAttr">
97
       <xs:restriction base="xs:string">
98
         <xs:enumeration value="group" />
99
         <xs:enumeration value="definition" />
100
       </xs:restriction>
101
     </xs:simpleType>
102
103
     <xs:group name="groupGroup">
104
105
       <xs:sequence>
         <xs:element name="doc" type="nx:basicType" minOccurs="0"</pre>
106
           maxOccurs="1" />
107
108
         <xs:element name="attribute" type="nx:attributeType"</pre>
109
           minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded" />
         <xs:element name="group" type="nx:groupType" minOccurs="0"</pre>
110
           maxOccurs="unbounded" />
111
         <xs:element name="field" type="nx:fieldType" minOccurs="0"</pre>
112
           maxOccurs="unbounded" />
113
         <xs:element name="link" type="nx:linkType" minOccurs="0"</pre>
114
           maxOccurs="unbounded" />
115
       </xs:sequence>
116
     </xs:group>
117
118
     119
120
     <xs:complexType name="basicComponent">
121
       <xs:sequence>
122
         <xs:element name="doc" type="nx:basicType" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1" />
123
       </xs:sequence>
124
       <xs:attribute name="name" use="required" />
125
     </xs:complexType>
126
127
     128
129
     <xs:simpleType name="basicType">
130
       <xs:annotation>
131
         <xs:documentation>
132
           This is the basic definition of a new type.
133
           Components must derive from an existing type
134
           and optionally provide documentation.
135
         </xs:documentation>
       </xs:annotation>
       <xs:restriction base="xs:string"></xs:restriction>
139
     </xs:simpleType>
140
     141
142
     <xs:complexType name="groupType">
143
       <xs:annotation>
144
         <xs:documentation>
145
           A group element refers to the definition of
146
147
           an existing NX object or a locally-defined component.
148
         </xs:documentation>
149
       </xs:annotation>
       <xs:group ref="nx:groupGroup" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
150
       <xs:attribute name="type" use="required">
151
```

```
<xs:simpleType>
152
           <xs:restriction base="xs:string">
153
             <xs:pattern value="NX.+"/>
154
           </xs:restriction>
155
         </xs:simpleType>
       </xs:attribute>
       <xs:attribute name="minOccurs" use="optional" default="0" type="xs:nonNegativeInteger"/ ←</pre>
       <xs:attribute name="maxOccurs" use="optional" default="unbounded"/>
159
       <xs:attribute name="name" use="optional" />
160
     </xs:complexType>
161
162
     163
164
     <xs:complexType name="dimsType">
165
       <!--
167
   Peter Peterson writes:
         Here is a model:
168
169
         <field name="data">
170
             <dimensions size="3"/>
171
         </field><field name="time-of-flight">
172
           <dimensions size="1">
173
             <dim index="1" ref="data" refindex="3" incr="1"/>
174
           </dimensions>
175
176
            . . .
         </field>
177
179
         In old terms this would make data[i,j,k] and time-of-flight[k+1].
         We need to get to the stage where people do not
180
         need to read a manual to understand an existing NXDL.
181
182
   183
   then Freddie Akeroyd writes:
184
   I think we have three cases to consider here:
185
   (1) specifying an explicit value for a dimension
186
   (2) specifying a dimension to be the same size as that of an array
   already defined elsewhere (optionally +- a value)
   (3) specifying a dimension to be the same as a data value defined
189
190
   elsewhere (e.g. num_scan_points, optionally +- a value)
191
   For (1) how about
192
193
   <dim index="1" value="3" />
194
195
   For (2) how about
196
197
   <field name="data">
198
   <dimensions size="3">
   <dim index="1" label="num_time_channels"/>
200
   < !-- dimensions with no constraints or labels do not need to be mentioned -->
201
   </dimensions>
202
   </field>
203
   <field name="time_of_flight">
204
   <dimensions size="1">
205
   <dim index="1" ref="num_time_channels" incr="1"/>
206
   </dimensions>
207
209
   </field>
210
211
   For (3) how about
212
```

```
<field name="num_scan_points" type="NX_INT"</pre>
213
   label="nscanpt" />
214
   <field name="data">
215
   <dimensions size="3">
216
   <dim index="1" label="num_time_channels"/>
   <dim index="3" ref="nscanpt"/>
   </dimensions>
   </field>
220
221
   Notes on dim tag:
222
223
   use 1 for first element in a sequence, +- to indicate sequence direction
224
   (or we could use an attribute instead)
225
226
   <dim index="1">
                     ! refers to first index (fastest varying)
227
228
   <dim index="-1"> ! refers to last index (slowest varying)
229
   <dim label="i">
                     ! we should constrain labels to be unique within the
230
   file and thus could be referred to
231
232
   from any location. This would mean that "i"
233
   could not be used everywhere as a label,
   but forcing the use of better names like
234
   "num_time_channels" makes things clearer. In the
235
   first instance by making label an xs:ID and
236
   ref an xs:IDREF we can enforce "something" in
237
   label="something" to always be unique and "some_ref" in ref="some_ref"
   to always point to a
   valid "label" (We may later want to use xs:key
   / xs:keyref to do this if we needed a second
241
   set of unique labels for another purpose)
242
243
   244
   then Mark Koennecke writes:
245
   I think the dimensions encoding is tightly integrated with the algorithm we
246
   use to validate them later on. I thought about something like:
247
248
   <dimensions size="3">
   <dim level="0" value="25"/>
250
   <dim level="1" value="np"/>
251
   <dim level="2" path="/entry/blablabla/somefield" dim="0"/>
252
   </dimensions>
253
   The first case is trivial: validate against a number
254
255
   The general idea is that the dimensions validator would initialise np
256
   the first place it comes up against it and
257
   checks against the value ever after. We must allow expressions like np+1
258
   The third syntax is to explicitly address a specific dimension of
261
   another variable.
262
263
264
       <xs:annotation>
265
         <xs:documentation>dimensions of a data element in a NeXus file</xs:documentation>
266
       </xs:annotation>
267
       <xs:sequence>
268
         <xs:element name="dim" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
269
270
            <xs:complexType>
              <xs:attribute name="index" type="nx:NX_CHAR">
271
272
                <xs:annotation>
                  <xs:documentation>Number indicating which axis (subscript) is
273
                    being described, ranging from 1 up to "size" (rank of the
274
```

```
data structure). For example, given an array A[i,j,k],
275
                     index="1" would refer to the "i" axis (subscript).</xs:documentation>
276
                 </xs:annotation>
277
              </xs:attribute>
278
              <xs:attribute name="value" type="nx:NX_CHAR">
                 <xs:annotation>
                   <xs:documentation>Length (number of values) of this axis.</xs:documentation>
282
                </xs:annotation>
283
              </xs:attribute>
              <xs:attribute name="ref" type="nx:NX_CHAR">
284
                <xs:annotation>
285
                   <xs:documentation>The dimension specification is the same as
286
                     that in the "ref" field, specified either by a relative path,
287
                     such as "polar_angle" or "../Qvec" or absolute path, such as
288
                     "/entry/path/to/follow/to/ref/field".
289
                  </xs:documentation>
291
                 </xs:annotation>
              </xs:attribute>
292
293
              <xs:attribute name="refindex" type="nx:NX_CHAR">
294
                <xs:annotation>
295
                   <xs:documentation>The dimension specification is the same as
                     the "refindex" axis within the "ref" field.
296
                     Requires "ref" attribute to be present.</xs:documentation>
297
                 </xs:annotation>
298
              </xs:attribute>
299
              <xs:attribute name="incr" type="nx:NX_CHAR">
301
                 <xs:annotation>
                   <xs:documentation>The dimension specification is related to
302
                     the "refindex" axis within the "ref" field by an
303
                     offset of "incr." Requires "ref" and "refindex"
304
                     attributes to be present.</xs:documentation>
305
                </xs:annotation>
306
              </xs:attribute>
307
            </xs:complexType>
308
          </xs:element>
309
        </xs:sequence>
310
        <xs:attribute name="size" type="nx:NX_CHAR">
311
          <xs:annotation>
312
            <xs:documentation>Rank (number of dimensions) of the data structure.
313
              For example: a[5] has size="1" while b[8,5,6,4] has size="4".
314
              See http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rank_(computer_programming)
315
              for more details.</xs:documentation>
316
          </xs:annotation>
317
        </xs:attribute>
318
      </xs:complexType>
319
320
      <xs:complexType name="linkType">
321
        <xs:complexContent>
322
          <xs:annotation>
323
            <xs:documentation>A link to another item.</xs:documentation>
324
          </xs:annotation>
325
          <xs:extension base="nx:basicComponent">
326
            <xs:attribute name="target" use="required">
327
              <xs:annotation>
328
                 <xs:documentation>path to element we link to</xs:documentation>
329
              </xs:annotation>
330
            </xs:attribute>
331
332
          </xs:extension>
333
        </xs:complexContent>
334
      </xs:complexType>
335
     <xs:complexType name="fieldType">
336
```

```
<xs:complexContent>
337
          <xs:annotation>
338
            <xs:documentation>A field declares a new element
339
            in the component being defined.</xs:documentation>
340
          </xs:annotation>
          <xs:extension base="nx:basicComponent">
343
            <xs:sequence>
              <xs:element name="dimensions" type="nx:dimsType"</pre>
344
                minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
345
                <xs:annotation>
346
                   <xs:documentation>dimensions of a data element
347
                  in a NeXus file</xs:documentation>
348
                 </xs:annotation>
349
              </xs:element>
350
              <xs:element name="attribute" type="nx:attributeType"</pre>
351
352
                minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
353
                <xs:annotation>
                   <xs:documentation>attributes of field</xs:documentation>
354
355
                 </xs:annotation>
356
              </xs:element>
              <xs:element name="enumeration" type="nx:enumerationType"</pre>
357
                minOccurs="0">
358
                 <xs:annotation>
359
                   <xs:documentation>A field can specify which
360
                   values are to be used</xs:documentation>
361
362
                </xs:annotation>
              </xs:element>
363
            </xs:sequence>
364
            <xs:attribute name="units" type="nx:anyUnitsAttr">
365
              <xs:annotation>
366
                <xs:documentation>
367
                  String describing the engineering units.
368
                  The string should be appropriate for the value
369
                  and should conform to the NeXus rules for units.
370
                  Can conformance be validated or ensured?
371
                </xs:documentation>
372
              </xs:annotation>
373
            </xs:attribute>
374
            <xs:attribute name="signal" type="nx:NX_POSINT">
375
376
              <xs:annotation>
                <xs:documentation>
377
                  Presence of the signal attribute means this field is an ordinate.
378
379
                  Integer marking this field as plottable data (ordinates).
380
                  The value indicates the priority of selection or interest.
381
                  Some facilities only use signal="1"
382
                  while others use signal="2" to indicate
                  plottable data of secondary interest.
384
                  Higher numbers are possible but not common
385
                  and interpretation is not standard.
386
387
                  A field with a signal attribute should not have an axis attribute.
388
                </xs:documentation>
389
              </xs:annotation>
390
            </xs:attribute>
391
            <xs:attribute name="axes" type="nx:NX_CHAR">
392
              <xs:annotation>
393
                 <xs:documentation>
395
                  Presence of the axes attribute means this field is an ordinate.
396
                  This attribute contains a white-space separated list
397
                  of paths to the names of independent axes when plotting this field.
398
```

```
</xs:documentation>
399
              </xs:annotation>
400
            </xs:attribute>
401
            <xs:attribute name="axis" type="nx:NX_POSINT">
402
              <xs:annotation>
                <xs:documentation>
                  NOTE: Use of this attribute is discouraged. It is for legacy support.
405
406
                  You should use the axes attribute instead.
407
                  Presence of the axis attribute means this field is an abcissa.
408
409
                  Integer marking this
410
                  field as an axis that is part of the data set.
411
                  The data set is a field with the attribute
412
                  signal="1" in the same group.
413
                  The value can range from 1 up to the number of
415
                  independent axes (abcissae) in the data set.
416
417
                  A value of axis="1" indicates that this field
418
                  contains the data for the first independent axis.
                  For example, the X axis in an XY data set.
419
420
                  A value of axis="2" indicates that this field
421
                  contains the data for the second independent axis.
422
                  For example, the Y axis in a 2-D data set.
423
                  A value of axis="3" indicates that this field
                  contains the data for the third independent axis.
426
                  For example, the Z axis in a 3-D data set.
427
428
                  A field with an axis attribute should not have a signal attribute.
429
                </xs:documentation>
430
              </xs:annotation>
431
            </xs:attribute>
432
            <xs:attribute name="primary" type="nx:NX_POSINT">
433
              <xs:annotation>
434
                <xs:documentation>
                  Integer indicating the priority of selection
436
                  of this field for plotting (or visualization) as an axis.
437
438
                  Presence of the primary attribute means this field is an abcissa.
439
                </xs:documentation>
440
              </xs:annotation>
441
            </xs:attribute>
442
            <xs:attribute name="type" type="nx:primitiveType" default="NX_CHAR"/>
443
            <xs:attribute name="minOccurs" use="optional" default="0">
444
              <xs:simpleType>
                <xs:restriction base="xs:nonNegativeInteger">
                  <xs:enumeration value="0"/>
447
448
                  <xs:enumeration value="1"/>
                </xs:restriction>
449
              </xs:simpleType>
450
            </xs:attribute>
451
            <xs:attribute name="maxOccurs" use="optional" default="1">
452
              <xs:simpleType>
453
                <xs:restriction base="xs:nonNegativeInteger">
454
                  <xs:enumeration value="1"/>
455
457
                    The "unbounded" is not valid for nonNegativeInteger
458
                    But that is what we really mean.
459
                  460
```

```
</xs:restriction>
461
              </xs:simpleType>
462
            </xs:attribute>
463
          </xs:extension>
464
       </xs:complexContent>
      </xs:complexType>
467
      <xs:complexType name="enumerationType">
468
       <xs:sequence>
469
         <xs:element name="item" type="nx:enumItemType" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
470
       </xs:sequence>
471
      </xs:complexType>
472
473
     <xs:complexType name="enumItemType">
474
475
       <xs:sequence>
         <xs:element name="doc" type="nx:basicType" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
477
            <xs:annotation>
478
              <xs:documentation>
479
                Items can be documented (but this documentation is not
                printed in the manual. It only appears in the NXDL file.)
480
              </xs:documentation>
481
            </xs:annotation>
482
          </xs:element>
483
       </xs:sequence>
484
485
        <xs:attribute name="value" use="required"/>
      </xs:complexType>
   </xs:schema>
```

# Appendix A

# **NeXus classes**

# A.1 Overview of NeXus classes

Each of the NeXus classes is described in two basic ways. First, a short list of descriptive information is provided as a header, then a table summarizing the fields and groups that comprise the NeXus class is given.

**category** The category of NXDL: either base (base class), application (application definition), or contributed (contributed definition)

**NXDL source** Name of the NeXus class and a URL to the source listing in the NeXus subversion repository.

version A string that documents this particular version of this NXDL.

**SVN Id** Subversion repository checkout identification, stripped of the surrounding dollar signs. (The *Id* is blank on files copied direct from the repository that are not checked out by a subversion client.)

NeXus Definition Language The NeXus Definition Language (NXDL) (described in a separate chapter of this manual) is used to describe the components in the NeXus Base Classes, as well as application and contributed definitions. The intent of NXDL is to provide a rules-based method for defining a NeXus data file that is specific to either an instrument (where NeXus has been for years) or an area of scientific technique or analysis. NXDL replaces the meta-DTD method used previously to define the NeXus base classes.

extends class NeXus class extended by this class. Most NeXus base classes only extend the base class definition (NXDL).

other classes included List (including URLs) of other classes used to define this class.

documentation Description of the NeXus class. No markup or formatting is allowed.

The table has columns to describe the basic information about each field or group in the class. An example of the varieties of specifications are given in the following table using items found in various NeXus base classes.

Name	Type	Units	Description (and Occurences)
program_name	NX_CHAR		Name of program used to generate this file
@version	NX CHAR		Program version number
e version	NA_CHAR		Occurences: 1: default
@configuration	NX_CHAR		configuration of the program
			A small image that is representative of the
thumbnail NXnote		entry. An example of this is a 640x480 JPEG	
	NAHote		image automatically produced by a low
			resolution plot of the NXdata.
@mime_type	NX_CHAR		expected: mime_type="image/*"

Table A.1: Example Tabular representation of a NeXus class

Name	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurences)
	NXgeometry		describe the geometry of this class
distance	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	Distance from sample
mode	"Single Bunch"		sayes amounting made
mode	"Multi Bunch"		source operating mode
	Ta		
	l W		
	depleted_U		
target_material	l enriched_U		Pulsed source target material
-	Hg		·
	l Pb		
	IC		

In the above example, the fields might appear in a NeXus XML data file as

### Example A.1 Example fragment of a NeXus XML data file

The columns in the table are described as follows:

Name Short name of the data field. Name must satisfy both HDF and XML naming rules.

Attributes Attributes are additional metadata used to define this variable. Attributes are identified with a leading "at" symbol (@) and belong with the preceding field or group. In the example above, the program\_name element has two attributes: version (required) and configuration (optional) while the thumbnail element has one attribute: mime\_type (optional).

Type Type of data to be represented by this variable. The type is one of those specified in the NeXus Definition Language.

In the case where the variable can take only one value from a known list, the list of known values is presented, such as: [
Beryllium | "Pyrolytic Graphite" | Graphite | Sapphire | Silicon | Supermirror ]. Selections with included whitespace are surrounded by quotes. See the example above for usage.

Units Data units, given as character strings, must conform to the NeXus units standard. See the "NeXus units" section for details.

**Description** A simple text description of the data field. No markup or formatting is allowed.

Occurences The absence of "Occurences" in the item description signifies that both minOccurs and maxOccurs have the default values. If the number of occurences of an item are specified in the NXDL (through @minOccurs and @maxOccurs attributes), they will be reported in the Description column similar to the example shown above.

Default values for occurences are shown in the following table. The NXDL element type is either a group (such as a NeXus base class), a field (that specifies the name and type of a variable), or an attribute of a field or group. The number of times an item can appear ranges between minOccurs and maxOccurs. A default minOccurs of zero means the item is optional. For attributes, maxOccurs cannot be greater than 1.

Table A.2: Default values for occurences

NXDL element type	minOccurs	maxOccurs
group	0	unbounded
field	0	unbounded
attribute	0	1

# A.2 NeXus Base Classes

A description of each NeXus Base Class is given.

# A.2.1 NXaperture

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXaperture (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXaperture.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

**SVN Id** Id: NXaperture.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

NeXus Definition Language NXDL

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXgeometry

documentation Template of a beamline aperture.

Table A.3: Tabular representation of NXaperture[definition]

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
	NXgeometry		location and shape of aperture
material	NX_CHAR		Absorbing material of the aperture
description	NX_CHAR		Description of aperture

A description of each NeXus Base Class is given.

#### A.2.2 NXattenuator

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXattenuator (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXattenuator.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXattenuator.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

NeXus Definition Language NXDL

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: no included classes

**documentation** Template of a beamline attenuator.

Table A.4: Tabular representation of NXattenuator[definition]

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
distance	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	Distance from sample
type	NX_CHAR		Type of attenuator, e.g. polythene
thickness	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	Thickness of attenuator along beam direction
scattering_cro-	NX FLOAT	NX_CROSS_SECTION	Scattering cross section (coherent+incoherent)
ss_section	NA_PLOAI	NA_CROSS_SECTION	Scattering cross section (concrent+inconcrent)
absorption_cro-	NX FLOAT	NX_CROSS_SECTION	Absorption cross section
ss_section	NA_TLOAI	IVA_EROSS_SECTION	Absorption cross section
attenuator_tra- nsmission	NX_FLOAT	NX_DIMENSIONLESS	The nominal amount of the beam that gets through (transmitted intensity)/(incident intensity)

A description of each NeXus Base Class is given.

#### A.2.3 NXbeam

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXbeam (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXbeam.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXbeam.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXdata

**documentation** Template of the state of the neutron or X-ray beam at any location. It will be referenced by beamline component groups within the NXinstrument group or by the NXsample group. Note that variables such as the incident energy could be scalar values or arrays. This group is especially valuable in storing the results of instrument simulations in which it is useful to specify the beam profile, time distribution etc. at each beamline component. Otherwise, its most likely use is in the NXsample group in which it defines the results of the neutron scattering by the sample, e.g., energy transfer, polarizations.

Table A.5: Tabular representation of NXbeam[definition]

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
distance	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	Distance from sample
incident_energy	NX_FLOAT	NX_ENERGY	Energy on entering beamline component Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="i"
final_energy	NX_FLOAT	NX_ENERGY	Energy on leaving beamline component Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="i"

Table A.5: (continued)

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
energy_transfer	NX_FLOAT	NX_ENERGY	Energy change caused by beamline component Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="i" value=""
incident_wavel-	NX_FLOAT	NX_WAVELENGTH	Wavelength on entering beamline component Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="i" value=""
incident_wavel- ength_spread	NX_FLOAT	NX_WAVELENGTH	Wavelength spread FWHM on entering component Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="i" value=""
incident_beam divergence	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	Divergence of beam entering this component Dimensions: size="2"  • dim: index="1" value="2" value=""  • dim: index="2" value="j" value=""
final_waveleng- th	NX_FLOAT	NX_WAVELENGTH	Wavelength on leaving beamline component Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="i" value=""
incident_polar- ization	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	Polarization vector on entering beamline component Dimensions: size="2"  • dim: index="1" value="2" value=""  • dim: index="2" value="j" value=""
final_polariza- tion	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	Polarization vector on leaving beamline component Dimensions: size="2"  • dim: index="1" value="2" value=""  • dim: index="2" value="j" value=""
final_waveleng- th_spread	NX_FLOAT	NX_WAVELENGTH	Wavelength spread FWHM of beam leaving this component Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="i"
final_beam_div- ergence	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	Divergence FWHM of beam leaving this component Dimensions: size="2"  • dim: index="1" value="2" value=""  • dim: index="2" value="j" value=""
flux	NX_FLOAT	NX_FLUX	flux incident on beam plane area Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="i" value=""
	NXdata		Distribution of beam with respect to relevant variable e.g. wavelength. This is mainly useful for simulations which need to store plottable information at each beamline component.

# A.2.4 NXbeam\_stop

category base (base class)

**NXDL source:** NXbeam\_stop (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXbeam\_stop.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXbeam\_stop.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXgeometry

documentation A class for a beamstop. Beamstops and their positions are important for SANS and SAXS experiments.

Table A.6: Tabular representation of NXbeam\_stop[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
	NXgeometry		engineering shape, orientation and position of
	TVAgeometry		the beam stop.
description	circular		description of beamstop
description	rectangular		description of beamstop
size	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	size of beamstop
X	NX FLOAT	NX LENGTH	x position of the beamstop in relation to the
^	NA_ILOAI	NA_LENGTH	detector
.,	NX FLOAT	NX LENGTH	y position of the beamstop in relation to the
У	NA_PLOAI	NA_LENGTH	detector
distance_to_de-	NX FLOAT	NX LENGTH	distance of the beamstop to the detector
tector	NA_I LOAI	NA_LENGTH	distance of the beamstop to the detector
status	in		
status	lout		

A description of each NeXus Base Class is given.

# A.2.5 NXbending\_magnet

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXbending\_magnet (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXbending\_magnet.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXbending\_magnet.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXdata, NXgeometry

documentation description for a bending magnet

Table A.7: Tabular representation of NXbending\_magnet[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
critical_energy	NX_FLOAT	NX_ENERGY	
bending_radius	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	
spectrum	NXdata		bending magnet spectrum
	NXgeometry		Engineering" position of bending magnet

#### A.2.6 NXcharacterization

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXcharacterization (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXcharacterization.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXcharacterization.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: no included classes

**documentation** Template of the top-level NeXus group which contains all the data and associated information that comprise a single measurement. It is mandatory that there is at least one group of this type in the NeXus file.

Table A.8: Tabular representation of NXcharacterization[definition]

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
definition	NX_CHAR		
@version	NX_CHAR		
@URL	NX_CHAR		

A description of each NeXus Base Class is given.

#### A.2.7 NXcollimator

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXcollimator (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXcollimator.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXcollimator.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXgeometry, NXlog

documentation Template of a beamline collimator.

Table A 0.	Tabular representation	of NXcollimator[definition]	
Table A.9.	rabular rebresentation	I OI NACOIIIIIatoriaeiiiittioiii	

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
	NXgeometry		position, shape and size
	Soller		
+	radial		
type	loscillating		
	honeycomb		
soller_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	Angular divergence of Soller collimator
divergence_x	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	divergence of collimator in local x direction
divergence_y	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	divergence of collimator in local y direction
frequency	NX_FLOAT	NX_FREQUENCY	Frequency of oscillating collimator
frequency_log	NXlog		Log of frequency
blade_thickness	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	blade thickness
blade_spacing	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	blade spacing
absorbing_mate-	NX CHAR		name of absorbing material
rial	WA_CHAR		hame of absorbing material
transmitting_m-	NX CHAR		name of transmitting material
aterial	177_011/11		name of transmitting material

# A.2.8 NXcrystal

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXcrystal (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXcrystal.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

**SVN Id** Id: NXcrystal.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXdata, NXgeometry, NXlog

**documentation** Template of a crystal monochromator or analyzer. Permits double bent monochromator comprised of multiple segments with anisotropic Gaussian mosaic. If curvatures are set to zero or are absent, array is considered to be flat. Scattering vector is perpendicular to surface. Crystal is oriented parallel to beam incident on crystal before rotation, and lies in vertical plane.

Table A.10: Tabular representation of NXcrystal[definition]

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
	NXgeometry		Position of crystal
	PG		
	l Ge		
	Si		Material of monochromating substance. Use
	l Cu		the "reflection" field to indicate the (hkl)
type	l Fe3Si		orientation. Use the "d_spacing" field to
	l CoFe		record the lattice plane spacing.
	l Cu2MnAl		
	Multilayer		
	Diamond		

Table A.10: (continued)

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
cut_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	Cut angle of reflecting Bragg plane and plane
- cuc_ungic	1111_1 20111	TWI_THTOLL	of crystal surface
			Unit cell parameters (lengths and angles)
			Dimensions: size="2"
unit_cell	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	• dim: index="1" value="n_comp" value=""
			• dim: index="2" value="6" value=""
unit_cell_volu-	NX_FLOAT	NX_VOLUME	Volume of the unit cell
me	NA_I-LOAI	TVA_VOLUME	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
			Orientation matrix of single crystal sample
			using Busing-Levy convention Dimensions: size="2"
orientation_ma-	NX_FLOAT		
trix	1111_1 20111		• dim: value="3" value=""
			• dim: value="3" value=""
			Optimum diffracted wavelength
	NV ELOAT	NV WAVELENCELL	Dimensions: apparent size="1"
wavelength	NX_FLOAT	NX_WAVELENGTH	• dim: value="i" value=""
d_spacing	NX_FLOAT	NX LENGTH	spacing between crystal planes of the reflection
scattering_vec-			
tor	NX_FLOAT	NX_WAVENUMBER	Scattering vector, Q, of nominal reflection
			Miller indices (hkl) values of nominal
			reflection
reflection	NX_INT	NX_UNITLESS	Dimensions: apparent size="1"
			• dim: value="3" value=""
segment_width	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	Horizontal width of individual segment
segment_height	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	Vertical height of individual segment
segment_thickn- ess	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	Thickness of individual segment
segment_gap	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	Typical gap between adjacent segments
segment_columns	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	number of segment columns in horizontal
			direction
segment_rows	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	number of segment rows in vertical direction
mosaic_horizon- tal	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	horizontal mosaic Full Width Half Maximum
mosaic_vertical	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	vertical mosaic Full Width Half Maximum
curvature_hori-	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	Horizontal curvature of focusing crystal
zontal			
curvature_vert- ical	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	Vertical curvature of focusing crystal
			Polar (scattering) angle at which crystal
			assembly is positioned. Note: some instrument
polar_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	geometries call this term 2theta.
r	2.0.2.2.2.07.11	1	Dimensions: apparent size="1"
			dim: ref="wavelength" value=""
			Azimuthal angle at which crystal assembly is
			positioned
azimuthal_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	Dimensions: apparent size="1"
			• dim: ref="wavelength" value=""
			_

Table A.10: (continued)

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
bragg_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	Bragg angle of nominal reflection Dimensions: apparent size="1"
temperature	NX FLOAT	NX TEMPERATURE	dim: ref="wavelength" value=""  average/nominal crystal temperature
temperature_log	NXlog	TVA_TEMI ERATORE	log file of crystal temperature
reflectivity	NXdata		crystal reflectivity versus wavelength
transmission	NXdata		crystal transmission versus wavelength

#### A.2.9 NXdata

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXdata (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXdata.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXdata.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: no included classes

**documentation** Template of plottable data and their dimension scales. It is mandatory that there is at least one group of this type in each NXentry group. Note that "variable" and "data" can be defined with different names. The "signal" and "axes" attribute of the "data" item define which items are plottable data and which are dimension scales.

Table A.11: Tabular representation of NXdata[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
variable	NX_NUMBER		Dimension scale defining an axis of the data Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="i" value=""
@long_name @distribution @first_good @last_good @axis	NX_CHAR NX_BOOLEAN NX_INT NX_INT NX_POSINT		Axis label Olfalse: single value, 1:true: multiple values Index of first good value Index of last good value Index (positive integer) identifying this specific set of numbers
variable_errors	NX_NUMBER		Errors associated with axis "variable" Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="i" value=""
data	NX_NUMBER		Data values Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="i" value=""
@signal @axes @long_name	NX_INT  NX_CHAR  NX_CHAR		plottable (independent) axis, indicate index number names of dependent axes data label

Table A.11: (continued)

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
errors	NX_NUMBER		Standard deviations of data values - the data array is identified by the attribute signal="1". This array must have the same dimensions as the data Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="i" value=""
scaling_factor	NX_FLOAT		The elements in data are usually float values really. For efficiency reasons these are usually stored as integers after scaling with a scale factor. This value is the scale factor. It is required to get the actual physical value, when necessary.
offset	NX_FLOAT		An optional offset to apply to the values in data.
х	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	This is an array holding the values to use for the x-axis of data. The units must be appropriate for the measurement.  Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="nx" value=""
У	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	This is an array holding the values to use for the y-axis of data. The units must be appropriate for the measurement.  Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="ny" value=""
z	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	This is an array holding the values to use for the z-axis of data. The units must be appropriate for the measurement.  Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="nz" value=""

### A.2.10 NXdetector

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXdetector (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXdetector.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXdetector.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXcharacterization, NXdata, NXgeometry, NXnote

**documentation** Template of a detector, detector bank, or multidetector. The indices require explanation: np - the number of points in a scan. This dimension is only present in scanning measurements. tof - the number of points in a time-of-flight axis. This is only present in time-of-flight measurements. i - the number of pixels in the slowest varying direction. This

is only present in missing in the point detector. j - the number of pixels in the fastest varying direction. This exists only in "area" detectors. HOUSEKEEPING: - remove all question marks - polar, azimuthal, distance, and wavelength need description - improve documentation throughout.

Table A.12: Tabular representation of NXdetector[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
time_of_flight	NX_FLOAT	NX_TIME_OF_FLIGHT	Total time of flight Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="tof+1" value=""
@axis @primary @long_name @link	NX_INT NX_INT NX_CHAR NX_CHAR		Axis label absolute path to location in NXdetector
raw_time_of_fl-	NX_INT	NX_PULSES	In DAQ clock pulses Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="tof+1" value=""
@frequency	NX_FLOAT		Clock frequency in Hz
detector_number	NX_INT		Identifier for detector Dimensions: size="2"  • dim: index="1" value="i" value=""  • dim: index="2" value="j" value=""
data	NX_NUMBER	NX_ANY	Data values Dimensions: size="4"  • dim: index="1" value="np" value=""  • dim: index="2" value="i" value=""  • dim: index="3" value="j" value=""  • dim: index="4" value="tof" value=""
@signal	NX_INT		
@axes @long_name @check_sum @link	NX_CHAR NX_CHAR NX_INT NX_CHAR		[number of scan points,x_offset?,y_offset?,time_of_flight?] Title of measurement Integral of data as check of data integrity absolute path to location in NXdetector
data_error	NX_NUMBER	NX_ANY	Data values Dimensions: size="4"  • dim: index="1" value="np" value=""  • dim: index="2" value="i" value=""  • dim: index="3" value="j" value=""  • dim: index="4" value="tof" value=""
@units @link	NX_CHAR NX_CHAR		absolute path to location in NXdetector
x_pixel_offset	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	offset from the detector center in x-direction Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="i" value=""
@axis @primary @long_name @link	NX_INT NX_INT NX_CHAR NX_CHAR		Axis label absolute path to location in NXdetector

Table A.12: (continued)

Table A.12: (continued)

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
			Detector gas pressure
			Dimensions: size="2"
gas_pressure	NX_FLOAT	NX_PRESSURE	• dim: index="1" value="i" value=""
3 -4	_	_	• dim: index="2" value="j" value=""
			• diffi. fildex= 2 value= j value=
detection_gas	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	maximum drift space dimension
path	11121 20111	1,11_221,0111	
			Crate number of detector Dimensions: size="2"
crate	NX_INT		• dim: index="1" value="i" value=""
			• dim: index="2" value="j" value=""
@local_name	NX_CHAR		Equivalent local term
erocar_name	TVI_CIII IIC		Slot number of detector
			Dimensions: size="2"
slot	NX_INT		• dim: index="1" value="i" value=""
	=		• dim: index="2" value="j" value=""
			dini. index= 2 value= j value=
@local_name	NX_CHAR		Equivalent local term
_	_		Input number of detector
			Dimensions: size="2"
input	NX_INT		• dim: index="1" value="i" value=""
			• dim: index="2" value="j" value=""
@local_name	NX_CHAR		Equivalent local term
			Description of type such as He3 gas cylinder, He3 PSD, scintillator, fission chamber,
type	NX_CHAR		proportion counter, ion chamber, ccd, pixel,
			image plate, cmos,
			Efficiency of detector with respect to e.g.
			wavelength
efficiency	NXdata		Look for special case table
errrerency	INAuata		efficiency[NXdata] (within
			NXdetector[definition]) below.
calibration_da-	NIV DATE THAT		date of last calibration (geometry and/or
te	NX_DATE_TIME		efficiency) measurements
calibration_me-			summary of conversion of array data to pixels
thod	NXnote		(e.g. polynomial approximations) and location
	ļ		of details of the calibrations
100000	point   linear		Have the detector is represented
layout	linear		How the detector is represented
	ı arca		Elapsed actual counting time
			Dimensions: size="1"
count_time	NX_NUMBER	NX_TIME	• dim: index="1" value="np" value=""
			dini. index= 1 value= np value=
data_file	NXnote		
	NXcharacterization		

Table A.12: (continued)

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
sequence_number	NX_CHAR		In order to properly sort the order of the images taken in (for example) a tomography experiment, a sequence number is stored with each image.  Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="nBrightFrames" value=""

#### A.2.10.1 Special case table: efficiency[NXdata] (within NXdetector[definition])

Table A.13: Tabular representation of efficiency[NXdata] (within NXdetector[definition])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
efficiency	NX_FLOAT	NX_DIMENSIONLESS	efficiency of the detector Dimensions: size="3" • dim: index="1" value="i" value="" • dim: index="2" value="j" value="" • dim: index="3" value="k" value=""
wavelength	NX_FLOAT	NX_WAVELENGTH	Dimensions: size="3"  • dim: index="1" value="i" value=""  • dim: index="2" value="j" value=""  • dim: index="3" value="k" value=""

A description of each NeXus Base Class is given.

#### A.2.11 NXdetector\_group

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXdetector\_group (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXdetector\_group.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXdetector\_group.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: no included classes

documentation This class is used to allow a logical grouping of detector elements (e.g. which tube, bank or group of banks) to be recorded in the file. As well as allowing you to e.g just select the "left" or "east" detectors, it may also be useful for determining which elements belong to the same PSD tube and hence have e.g. the same dead time. For example, if we had "bank1" composed of "tube1", "tube2" and "tube3" then group\_names would be the string "bank1, bank1/tube1, bank1/tube2,bank1/tube3" group\_index would be {1,2,3,4} group\_parent would be {-1,1,1,1} The mapping array is interpreted as group 1 is a top level group containing groups 2, 3 and 4 A group\_index array in NXdetector give the base group for a detector element.

Table A.14: Tabular representation of NXdetector\_group[definition]

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
group_names	NX_CHAR		Comma separated list of name
group_index	NX_INT		Unique ID for group. A group_index array in NXdetector give the base group for a detector element.  Dimensions: apparent size="1"  • dim: value="i" value=""
group_parent	NX_INT		Index of group parent in the hierarchy, -1 means no parent (i.e. a top level) group Dimensions: apparent size="1"  • dim: ref="group_index" value=""
group_type	NX_INT		Code number for group type e.g. bank=1, tube=2 etc. Dimensions: apparent size="1"  • dim: ref="group_index" value=""

# A.2.12 NXdisk\_chopper

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXdisk\_chopper (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXdisk\_chopper.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

**SVN Id** Id: NXdisk\_chopper.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXgeometry

documentation

Table A.15: Tabular representation of NXdisk\_chopper[definition]

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
	"Chopper type single"		
type	contra_rotating_pair		
	synchro_pair		
rotation_speed	NX_FLOAT	NX_FREQUENCY	chopper rotation speed
slits	NX_INT		Number of slits
slit_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	angular opening
pair_separation	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	disc spacing in direction of beam
radius	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	radius to centre of slit
slit_height	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	total slit height
phase	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	chopper phase angle
			pulse reduction factor of this chopper in
ratio	NX_INT		relation to other choppers/fastest pulse in the
			instrument
distance	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	Effective distance to the origin

Table A.15: (continued)

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
wavelength_ran- ge	NX_FLOAT	NX_WAVELENGTH	low and high values of wavelength range transmitted Dimensions: apparent size="1"  • dim: value="2" value=""
	NXgeometry		

# A.2.13 NXentry

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXentry (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXentry.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXentry.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

NeXus Definition Language NXDL

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXcharacterization, NXdata, NXinstrument, NXmonitor, NXnote, NXprocess, NXsample, NXuser

**documentation** Template of the top-level NeXus group which contains all the data and associated information that comprise a single measurement. It is mandatory that there is at least one group of this type in the NeXus file.

Table A.16: Tabular representation of NXentry[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
title	NX_CHAR		Extended title for entry
experiment_ide-	NV CHAD		Unique identifier for the experiment, defined
ntifier	NX_CHAR		by the facility, possibly linked to the proposals
experiment_des-	NX CHAR		Brief summary of the experiment, including
cription	NA_CHAR		key objectives.
experiment_doc-	NXnote		Description of the full experiment (document
umentation	NAHote		in pdf, latex,)
collection_ide-	NX_CHAR		User or Data Acquisition defined group of
ntifier	NA_CHAR		NeXus files or NXentry
collection_des-	NX CHAR		Brief summary of the collection, including
cription	NA_CHAR		grouping criteria.
entry_identifi-	NX CHAR		unique identifier for the measurement, defined
er	WA_CHIIK		by the facility.
definition	NX CHAR		Official NeXus DTD or NXDL schema to
deliniteion	TVI_CIII IK		which this file conforms
@version	NX_CHAR		DTD or NXDL version number
@URL	NX_CHAR		URL of DTD or NXDL file
			Local DTD or NXDL schema extended from
definition loc-			the file specified in the "definition" tag. This
al	NX_CHAR		contains the locally defined additional fields in
aı			the file.
@version	NX_CHAR		DTD or NXDL version number
@URL	NX_CHAR		URL of DTD or NXDL file
start_time	NX_DATE_TIME		Starting time of measurement
end_time	NX_DATE_TIME		Ending time of measurement

Table A.16: (continued)

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
duration	NX_INT	NX_TIME	Duration of measurement
			Time transpired actually collecting data i.e.
collection_time	NX_FLOAT	NX_TIME	taking out time when collection was suspended
			due to e.g. temperature out of range
run_cycle	NX_CHAR		
program_name	NX_CHAR		Name of program used to generate this file
@version	NX_CHAR		Program version number
@configuration	NX_CHAR		configuration of the program
			Revision id of the file due to re-calibration,
revision	NX_CHAR		reprocessing, new analysis, new instrument
			definition format,
@comment	NX_CHAR		
notes	NXnote		Notes describing entry
			A small image that is representative of the
thumbnail	NXnote		entry. An example of this is a 640x480 jpeg
CHUMBHAII	NAHote		image automatically produced by a low
			resolution plot of the NXdata.
@mime_type	NX_CHAR		The value should be an "image/*"
	NXcharacterization		
	NXuser		
	NXsample		
	NXinstrument		
	NXmonitor		
	NXdata		
	NXprocess		

# A.2.14 NXenvironment

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXenvironment (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXenvironment.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXenvironment.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXgeometry, NXnote, NXsensor

documentation This class describes an external condition applied to the sample

Table A.17: Tabular representation of NXenvironment[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
	NX CHAR		Apparatus identification code/model number;
name	NA_CHAR		e.g. OC100 011
ahant nama	NX CHAR		Alternative short name, perhaps for dashboard
short_name	NA_CHAR		display like a present Seblock name
type	NX_CHAR		Type of apparatus. This could be the SE codes
			in scheduling database; e.g. OC/100

Table A.17: (continued)

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
description	NX CHAR		Description of the apparatus; e.g. 100mm bore
			orange cryostat with Roots pump
nrogram	NX_CHAR		Program controlling the apparatus; e.g.
program			LabView VI name
position	NXgeometry		The position and orientation of the apparatus
	NXnote		Additional information, LabView logs, digital
NAHote	NAHote		photographs, etc
	NXsensor		

# A.2.15 NXevent\_data

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXevent\_data (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXevent\_data.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

**SVN Id** Id: NXevent\_data.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

NeXus Definition Language NXDL

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: no included classes

documentation Time-of-flight events

Table A.18: Tabular representation of NXevent\_data[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
time_of_flight	NX_INT	NX_TIME_OF_FLIGHT	A list of time of flight for each event as it comes in. This list is for all pulses with information to attach to a particular pulse located in events_per_pulse.  Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="i" value=""
pixel_number	NX_INT	NX_DIMENSIONLESS	There will be extra information in the NXdetector to convert pixel_number to detector_number. This list is for all pulses with information to attach to a particular pulse located in events_per_pulse.  Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="i" value=""
pulse_time	NX_INT	NX_TIME	The time that each pulse started with respect to the offset Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="j" value=""
@offset	NX_INT		ISO8601

Table A.18: (continued)

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
events_per_pul- se	NX_INT	NX_DIMENSIONLESS	This connects the index "i" to the index "j".  The jth element is the number of events in "i" that occurred during the jth pulse.  Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="j" value=""
pulse_height	NX_FLOAT	NX_DIMENSIONLESS	If voltages from the ends of the detector are read out this is where they go. This list is for all events with information to attach to a particular pulse height. The information to attach to a particular pulse is located in events_per_pulse.  Dimensions: size="2"  • dim: index="1" value="i" value=""  • dim: index="2" value="k" value=""

# A.2.16 NXfermi\_chopper

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXfermi\_chopper (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXfermi\_chopper.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXfermi\_chopper.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXgeometry

documentation Description of a Fermi chopper, possibly with curved slits.

Table A.19: Tabular representation of NXfermi\_chopper[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
type	NX_CHAR		Fermi chopper type
rotation_speed	NX_FLOAT	NX_FREQUENCY	chopper rotation speed
radius	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	radius of chopper
slit	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	width of an individual slit
r_slit	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	radius of curvature of slits
number	NX_INT	NX_UNITLESS	number of slits
height	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	input beam height
width	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	input beam width
wavelength	NX_FLOAT	NX_WAVELENGTH	Wavelength transmitted by chopper
	NXgeometry		geometry of the fermi chopper
absorbing_mate-	NX CHAR		absorbing material
rial	IVA_CHAIN		absorbing material
transmitting_m-	NX CHAR		transmitting material
aterial	TAI_CIIIII		transmitting material

# A.2.17 NXfilter

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXfilter (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXfilter.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXfilter.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXdata, NXgeometry, NXlog, NXsensor

documentation Template for specifying the state of band pass filters

Table A.20: Tabular representation of NXfilter[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
	NXgeometry		Geometry of the filter
	Beryllium		
	"Pyrolytic Graphite"		
description	Graphite		
description	Sapphire		
	Silicon		
	Supermirror		
a+ a+a	in		
status	lout		
transmission	NXdata		Wavelength transmission profile of filter
temperature	NX_FLOAT	NX_TEMPERATURE	average/nominal filter temperature
temperature_log	NXlog		Linked temperature_log for the filter
sensor_type	NXsensor		Sensor(s)used to monitor the filter temperature
unit_cell_a	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	Unit cell lattice parameter: length of side a
unit_cell_b	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	Unit cell lattice parameter: length of side b
unit_cell_c	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	Unit cell lattice parameter: length of side c
unit_cell_alpha	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	Unit cell lattice parameter: angle alpha
unit_cell_beta	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	Unit cell lattice parameter: angle beta
unit_cell_gamma	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	Unit cell lattice parameter: angle gamma
			Unit cell
unit_cell_volu-	NV ELOAT	NV VOLUME	Dimensions: size="1"
me	NX_FLOAT	NX_VOLUME	• dim: index="1" value="n_comp" value=""
			•
			Orientation matrix of single crystal filter
			Dimensions: size="3"
			• dim: index="1" value="n_comp" value=""
orientation_ma-	NX_FLOAT		•
trix			• dim: index="2" value="3" value=""
			• dim: index="3" value="3" value=""
m_value	NX_FLOAT	NX_DIMENSIONLESS	m value of supermirror filter
substrate_mate-	NV CHAD		substrate meterial of supermirror filter
rial	NX_CHAR		substrate material of supermirror filter
substrate_thic-	NX_FLOAT	NX LENGTH	substrate thickness of supermirror filter
kness	NA_FLUAI	NA_LENGIH	substrate unexhess of supermitter filter

Table A.20: (continued)

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
coating_materi-	NX_CHAR		coating material of supermirror filter
substrate_roug- hness	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	substrate roughness (RMS) of supermirror filter
coating_roughn- ess	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	coating roughness (RMS) of supermirror filter Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: incr="1" value="nsurf" value=""

# A.2.18 NXflipper

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXflipper (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXflipper.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

**SVN Id** Id: NXflipper.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

NeXus Definition Language NXDL

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: no included classes

documentation Template of a beamline spin flipper.

Table A.21: Tabular representation of NXflipper[definition]

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
type	coil		
	current-sheet		
flip_turns	NX_FLOAT	NX_PER_LENGTH	Linear density of turns (such as number of
			turns/cm) in flipping field coils
comp_turns	NX_FLOAT	NX_PER_LENGTH	Linear density of turns (such as number of
			turns/cm) in compensating field coils
guide_turns	NX_FLOAT	NX_PER_LENGTH	Linear density of turns (such as number of
			turns/cm) in guide field coils
flip_current	NX_FLOAT	NX_CURRENT	Flipping field coil current in "on" state"
comp_current	NX_FLOAT	NX_CURRENT	Compensating field coil current in "on" state"
guide_current	NX_FLOAT	NX_CURRENT	Guide field coil current in "on" state"
thickness	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	thickness along path of neutron travel

A description of each NeXus Base Class is given.

# A.2.19 NXgeometry

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXgeometry (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXgeometry.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXgeometry.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

NeXus Definition Language NXDL

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXorientation, NXshape, NXtranslation

**documentation** This is the description for a general position of a component. It is recommended to name an instance of NXgeometry as "geometry" to aid in the use of the definition in simulation codes such as McStas. Also, in HDF, linked items must share the same name. However, it might not be possible or practical in all situations.

Table A.22: Tabular representation of NXgeometry[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
	NXshape		shape/size information of component
	NXtranslation		translation of component
	NXorientation		orientation of component
	NX_CHAR		Optional description/label. Probably only
doggnintion			present if we are an additional reference point
description			for components rather than the location of a
			real component
component_index			Position of the component along the beam
	NX_INT		path. The sample is at 0, components upstream
			have negative component_index, components
			downstream have positive component_index.

A description of each NeXus Base Class is given.

### A.2.20 NXguide

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXguide (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXguide.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXguide.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

NeXus Definition Language NXDL

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXdata, NXgeometry

documentation Template of NXguide

Table A.23: Tabular representation of NXguide[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
	NXgeometry		
description	NX_CHAR		
incident_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	
reflectivity	NXdata		Reflectivity as function of wavelength [nsurf,i]
bend_angle_x	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	

Table A.23: (continued)

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
bend_angle_y	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	
interior_atmos- phere	vacuum   helium   argon		
external_mater- ial	NX_CHAR		external material outside substrate
m_value	NX_FLOAT		The m value for a supermirror, which defines the supermirror regime in multiples of the critical angle of Nickel.  Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="nsurf" value=""
substrate_mate- rial	NX_FLOAT		Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="nsurf" value=""
substrate_thic- kness	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="nsurf" value=""
coating_materi-	NX_FLOAT		Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="nsurf" value=""
substrate_roug- hness	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="nsurf" value=""
coating_roughn- ess	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="nsurf" value=""
number_sections	NX_INT	NX_UNITLESS	number of substrate sections

# A.2.21 NXinsertion\_device

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXinsertion\_device (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXinsertion\_device.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXinsertion\_device.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXdata, NXgeometry

documentation This is the description for an insertion device.

Table A.24: Tabular representation of NXinsertion\_device[definition]

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
+1/00	undulator		
type	l wiggler		
gap	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	

Table A.24: (continued)

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
taper	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	
phase	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	
poles	NX_INT	NX_UNITLESS	number of poles
length	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	length of insertion device
power	NX_FLOAT	NX_POWER	total power delivered by insertion device
energy	NX_FLOAT	NX_ENERGY	energy of peak
bandwidth	NX_FLOAT	NX_ENERGY	bandwidth of peak energy
harmonic	NX_INT	NX_UNITLESS	harmonic of peak
spectrum	NXdata		spectrum of insertion device
	NXgeometry		"Engineering" position of insertion device

#### A.2.22 NXinstrument

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXinstrument (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXinstrument.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXinstrument.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXaperture, NXattenuator, NXbeam, NXbeam\_stop, NXbending\_magnet, NXcollimator, NXcrystal, NXdetector, NXdisk\_chopper, NXfermi\_chopper, NXfilter, NXflipper, NXguide, NXinsertion\_device, NXmirror, NX-moderator, NXpolarizer, NXsource, NXvelocity\_selector

**documentation** Template of instrument descriptions comprising various beamline components. Each component will also be a NeXus group defined by its distance from the sample. Negative distances represent beamline components that are before the sample while positive distances represent components that are after the sample. This device allows the unique identification of beamline components in a way that is valid for both reactor and pulsed instrumentation.

Table A.25: Tabular representation of NXinstrument[definition]

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
name	NX_CHAR		Name of instrument
@short_name	NX_CHAR		short name for instrument, perhaps the acronym
	NXaperture		
	NXattenuator		
	NXbeam		
	NXbeam_stop		
	NXbending_magnet		
	NXcollimator		
	NXcrystal		
	NXdetector		
	NXdisk_chopper		
	NXfermi_chopper		
	NXfilter		
	NXflipper		

Table A.25: (continued)

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
	NXguide		
	NXinsertion_device		
	NXmirror		
	NXmoderator		
	NXpolarizer		
	NXsource		
	NXvelocity_selector		

# A.2.23 NXlog

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXlog (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXlog.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXlog.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

NeXus Definition Language NXDL

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: no included classes

**documentation** Definition of logged information, i.e. information monitored during the run. They contain the logged values and the times at which they were measured as elapsed time since a starting time recorded in ISO8601 format. This method of storing logged data helps to distinguish instances in which a variable is a dimension scale of the data, in which case it is stored in an NXdata group, and instances in which it is logged during the run, when it should be stored in an NXlog group.

Table A.26: Tabular representation of NXlog[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
time	NX_FLOAT	NX_TIME	Time of logged entry. The times are relative to the "start" attribute and in the units specified in the "units" attribute.
@start	NX_DATE_TIME		
value	NX_NUMBER	NX_ANY	Array of logged value, such as temperature
raw_value	NX_NUMBER	NX_ANY	Array of raw information, such as thermocouple voltage
description	NX_CHAR		Description of logged value
average_value	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	
average_value error	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	standard deviation of average_value
minimum_value	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	
maximum_value	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	
duration	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	Total time log was taken

A description of each NeXus Base Class is given.

#### A.2.24 NXmirror

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXmirror (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXmirror.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXmirror.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXdata, NXgeometry

documentation Template of a beamline supermirror.

Table A.27: Tabular representation of NXmirror[definition]

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
	NXgeometry		
description	NX_CHAR		
incident_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	
reflectivity	NXdata		Reflectivity as function of wavelength
bend_angle_x	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	
bend_angle_y	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	
interior_atmos- phere	vacuum   helium   argon		
external_mater- ial	NX_CHAR		external material outside substrate
m_value	NX_FLOAT	NX_UNITLESS	The m value for a supermirror, which defines the supermirror regime in multiples of the critical angle of Nickel.
substrate_mate- rial	NX_CHAR		
substrate_thic-	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	
kness	IVA_I LOAI	NX_EENGIII	
coating_materi- al	NX_CHAR		
substrate_roug-	NX FLOAT	NX LENGTH	
hness	TM_TLOAT	TVA_LENGTH	
coating_roughn- ess	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	

A description of each NeXus Base Class is given.

#### A.2.25 NXmoderator

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXmoderator (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXmoderator.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXmoderator.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXdata, NXgeometry, NXlog

documentation This is the description for a general moderator

Table A.28: Tabular representation of NXmoderator[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
	NXgeometry		"Engineering" position of moderator
distance	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	Effective distance as seen by measuring radiation
type	H20   D20   "Liquid H2"   "Liquid CH4"   "Liquid D2"   "Solid D2"   C   "Solid CH4"   "Solid H2"		
poison_depth	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	
coupled	NX_BOOLEAN		whether the moderator is coupled
coupling_mater- ial	NX_CHAR		The material used for coupling. Usually Cd.
poison_material	Gd   Cd		
temperature	NX_FLOAT	NX_TEMPERATURE	average/nominal moderator temperature
temperature_log	NXlog		log file of moderator temperature
pulse_shape	NXdata		moderator pulse shape

A description of each NeXus Base Class is given.

#### A.2.26 NXmonitor

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXmonitor (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXmonitor.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXmonitor.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

NeXus Definition Language NXDL

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXgeometry, NXlog

**documentation** Template of monitor data. It is similar to the NXdata groups containing monitor data and its associated dimension scale, e.g. time\_of\_flight or wavelength in pulsed neutron instruments. However, it may also include integrals, or scalar monitor counts, which are often used in both in both pulsed and steady-state instrumentation.

Table A.29: Tabular representation of NXmonitor[definition]

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
	monitor		Count to a preset value based on either clock
mode	ltimer		time (timer) or received monitor counts
	NW MIMDED	NIX ANIX	(monitor).
preset	NX_NUMBER NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY NX_LENGTH	preset value for time or monitor
distance	NA_FLOAI	NA_LENGTH	Distance of monitor from sample Range (X-axis, Time-of-flight, etc.) over
			which the integral was calculated
range	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	Dimensions: apparent size="1"
Tange	NA_ILOAI	IVA_AIVI	• dim: value="2" value=""
			diffi. value= 2 value=
integral	NX_NUMBER	NX_ANY	Total integral monitor counts
integral_log	NXlog		Time variation of monitor counts
tuno	"Fission Chamber"		
type	Scintillator		
			Time-of-flight
time of flight	NX_FLOAT	NX_TIME_OF_FLIGHT	Dimensions: apparent size="1"
time_of_flight	NA_FLOAI	NA_TIME_OF_FLIGHT	dim: ref="efficiency" value=""
			Monitor efficiency
	NV NUMBER	NV DIMENSIONI ESS	Dimensions: apparent size="1"
efficiency	NX_NUMBER	NX_DIMENSIONLESS	• dim: ref="i" value=""
			Monitor data The signal and axes attributes
			take the same definitions as in NXdata: signal:
			signal="1" means this is the plottable data
			axes: axes="names" where names are defined
data	NX_NUMBER	NX_ANY	as a comma-delimited string within this
			attribute in the C-order of the data array
			Dimensions: apparent size="1"
			• dim: value=""
@signal	NX_INT		
@axes	NX_CHAR		D (1 (1 (1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
sampled_fracti-	NX_FLOAT	NX_DIMENSIONLESS	Proportion of incident beam sampled by the monitor (0 <x<1)< td=""></x<1)<>
on	NXgeometry		Geometry of the monitor
	rageometry		Elapsed actual counting time, can be an array
			of size np when scanning. This is not the
count_time	NX_FLOAT	NX_TIME	difference of the calendar time but the time the
004110_011110	1.11_1 20/11	1.11_111111	instrument was really counting, without pauses
			or times lost due beam unavailability

## A.2.27 NXmonochromator

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXmonochromator (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXmonochromator.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXmonochromator.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXdata, NXgeometry

**documentation** This is a base class for everything which selects a wavelength or energy, be it a monochromator crystal, a velocity selector, a undulator or whatever expected units wavelength: angstrom energy: eV

Table A.30: Tabular representation of NXmonochromator[definition]

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
wavelength	NX_FLOAT	NX_WAVELENGTH	wavelength selected
wavelength_err-	NX FLOAT	NX WAVELENGTH	wavelength standard deviation
or	NA_PLOAT	NA_WAVELENGTII	wavelength standard deviation
energy	NX_FLOAT	NX_ENERGY	energy selected
energy_error	NX_FLOAT	NX_ENERGY	energy standard deviation
distribution	NXdata		
geometry	NXgeometry		

A description of each NeXus Base Class is given.

#### A.2.28 NXnote

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXnote (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXnote.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

**SVN Id** Id: NXnote.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

NeXus Definition Language NXDL

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: no included classes

documentation This class can be used to store additional information in a NeXus file e.g. pictures, movies, audio, additional

text logs

Table A.31: Tabular representation of NXnote[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
author	NX_CHAR		Author or creator of note
date	NX_DATE_TIME		Date note created/added
type	NX CHAR		Mime content type of note data field e.g.
cype	NA_CHAR		image/jpeg, text/plain, text/html}
file name	NX CHAR		Name of original file name if note was read
file_name	NA_CHAR		from an external source
description	NX_CHAR		Title of an image or other details of the note
data	NX BINARY		Binary note data - if text, line terminator is
uata	NA_DINAKI		[CR][LF].

A description of each NeXus Base Class is given.

# A.2.29 NXobject

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXobject (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXobject.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

**SVN Id** Id: NXuser.nxdl.xml 303 2009-01-30 17:55:59Z Freddie Akeroyd

NeXus Definition Language NXDL

extends class:

other classes included: no included classes

documentation This is the base object of NeXus

No fields or groups are defined (nothing to show in a table at this point).

A description of each NeXus Base Class is given.

#### A.2.30 NXorientation

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXorientation (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXorientation.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

**SVN Id** Id: NXorientation.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXgeometry

documentation This is the description for a general orientation of a component - it is used by the NXgeometry class

Table A.32: Tabular representation of NXorientation[definition]

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
	NXgeometry		Link to another object if we are using relative positioning, else absent  The orientation information is stored as
value	NX_FLOAT	NX_UNITLESS	direction cosines. The direction cosines will be between the local coordinate directions and the reference directions (to origin or relative NXgeometry). Calling the local unit vectors (x',y',z') and the reference unit vectors (x,y,z) the six numbers will be [x' dot x, x' dot y, x' dot z, y' dot x, y' dot y, y' dot z] where "dot" is the scalar dot product (cosine of the angle between the unit vectors). The unit vectors in both the local and reference coordinates are right-handed and orthonormal.  Dimensions: apparent size="2"  • dim: value="numobj" value=""

#### A.2.31 NXparameters

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXparameters (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXparameters.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXparameters.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: no included classes

documentation Container for parameters, usually used in processing or analysis.

Table A.33: Tabular representation of NXparameters[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
			A parameter (also known as a term) that is
term	NX_CHAR		used in or results from processing.
			Occurences: 0: 9999999999999999999999999999999999
@units	NX_CHAR		

A description of each NeXus Base Class is given.

# A.2.32 NXpolarizer

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXpolarizer (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXpolarizer.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXpolarizer.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: no included classes

documentation Template of a beamline spin polarizer. This is a first cut. This is NOT the last word.

Table A.34: Tabular representation of NXpolarizer[definition]

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
type	NX_CHAR		crystal,supermirror
composition	NX CHAR		description of the composition of the
Composition	NA_CHAR		polarizing material
reflection	NX_INT	NX_UNITLESS	[hkl] values of nominal reflection Dimensions: apparent size="1" • dim: value="3" value=""
efficiency	NX_FLOAT	NX_DIMENSIONLESS	polarizing efficiency

# A.2.33 NXpositioner

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXpositioner (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXpositioner.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXpositioner.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

NeXus Definition Language NXDL

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: no included classes

**documentation** This is the description for a generic positioner.

Table A.35: Tabular representation of NXpositioner[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
description	NX_CHAR		description of positioner
			best known value of positioner - need [n] as
			may be scanned
value	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	Dimensions: size="1"
			• dim: index="1" value="n" value=""
			raw value of positioner - need [n] as may be
			scanned
raw_value	NX_NUMBER	NX_ANY	Dimensions: size="1"
			• dim: index="1" value="n" value=""
			targeted (commanded) value of positioner -
			need [n] as may be scanned
target_value	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	Dimensions: size="1"
			• dim: index="1" value="n" value=""
			maximum allowable difference between
			target_value and value
tolerance	NX FLOAT	NX ANY	Dimensions: size="1"
			• dim: index="1" value="n" value=""
soft_limit_min	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	minimum allowed limit to set value
soft_limit_max	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	maximum allowed limit to set value
controller_rec-	NX_CHAR		Hardware device record, e.g. EPICS process
ord	TIZI_CITAR		variable, taco/tango

A description of each NeXus Base Class is given.

# A.2.34 NXprocess

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXprocess (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXprocess.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXprocess.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXnote

documentation Template for a process.

Table A.36: Tabular representation of NXprocess[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
program	NX_CHAR		Name of the program used for reconstruction
version	NX_CHAR		Version of the program used
date	NX_DATE_TIME		Date and time of reconstruction processing.
	NXnote		The note will contain information about how the data was processed. The contents of the note can be anything that the processing code can understand, or simple text. The name will be numbered to allow for ordering of steps.

A description of each NeXus Base Class is given.

#### A.2.35 NXroot

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXroot (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXroot.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXroot.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

NeXus Definition Language NXDL

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXentry

documentation Definition of the root NeXus group.

Table A.37: Tabular representation of NXroot[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
	NXentry		entries
			Occurences: 1: default

A description of each NeXus Base Class is given.

# A.2.36 NXsample

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXsample (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXsample.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXsample.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

NeXus Definition Language NXDL

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXbeam, NXdata, NXenvironment, NXgeometry, NXlog

**documentation** Template of the state of the sample. This could include scanned variables that are associated with one of the data dimensions, e.g. the magnetic field, or logged data, e.g. monitored temperature vs elapsed time.

Table A.38: Tabular representation of NXsample[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
name	NX_CHAR		Descriptive name of sample
chemical_formu-la	NX_CHAR		The chemical formula specified using CIF conventions. Abbreviated version of CIF standard: 1. Only recognized element symbols may be used. 2. Each element symbol is followed by a 'count' number. A count of '1' may be omitted. 3. A space or parenthesis must separate each cluster of (element symbol + count). 4. Where a group of elements is enclosed in parentheses, the multiplier for the group must follow the closing parentheses. That is, all element and group multipliers are assumed to be printed as subscripted numbers. 5. Unless the elements are ordered in a manner that corresponds to their chemical structure, the order of the elements within any group or moiety depends on whether or not carbon is present. If carbon is present, the order should be: C, then H, then the other elements in alphabetical order of their symbol. If carbon is not present, the elements are listed purely in alphabetic order of their symbol. This is the 'Hill' system used by Chemical Abstracts.
temperature	NX_FLOAT	NX_TEMPERATURE	Sample temperature. This could be a scanned variable Dimensions: apparent size="1" • dim: value=""
electric_field	NX_FLOAT	NX_VOLTAGE	Applied electric field Dimensions: apparent size="1"  • dim: value=""
@direction	NX_CHAR		
magnetic_field	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	Applied magnetic field Dimensions: apparent size="1" • dim: value=""
@direction	NX_CHAR		

Table A.38: (continued)

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
stress_field	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	Applied external stress field Dimensions: apparent size="1" • dim: value=""
@direction	NX_CHAR		
pressure	NX_FLOAT	NX_PRESSURE	Applied pressure Dimensions: apparent size="1" • dim: value=""
changer_positi-	NX_INT	NX_UNITLESS	Sample changer position
unit_cell	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	Unit cell parameters (lengths and angles) Dimensions: size="2"  • dim: index="1" value="n_comp" value=""  • dim: index="2" value="6" value=""
unit_cell_volu-	NX_FLOAT	NX_VOLUME	Volume of the unit cell Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="n_comp" value=""
sample_orienta- tion	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	This will follow the Busing and Levy convention from Acta.Crysta v22, p457 (1967) Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="3" value=""
orientation_ma- trix	NX_FLOAT		Orientation matrix of single crystal sample. This will follow the Busing and Levy convention from Acta.Crysta v22, p457 (1967) Dimensions: size="3"  • dim: index="1" value="n_comp" value=""  • dim: index="2" value="3" value=""  • dim: index="3" value="3" value=""
mass	NX_FLOAT	NX_MASS	Mass of sample Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="n_comp" value=""
density	NX_FLOAT	NX_MASS_DENSITY	Density of sample Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="n_comp" value=""
relative_molec- ular_mass	NX_FLOAT	NX_MASS	Relative Molecular Mass of sample Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="n_comp" value=""
type	sample   sample+can   can   "calibration sample"   "normalisation sample"   "simulated data"   none   "sample environment"		

Table A.38: (continued)

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
situation	air   vacuum   "inert atmosphere"   "oxidising atmosphere"   "reducing atmosphere"   "sealed can"   other		The atmosphere will be one of the components, which is where its details will be stored; the relevant components will be indicated by the entry in the sample_component member.
description	NX_CHAR		Description of the sample
preparation_da- te	NX_DATE_TIME		Date of preparation of the sample
geometry	NXgeometry		The position and orientation of the center of mass of the sample
	NXbeam		Details of beam incident on sample - used to calculate sample/beam interaction point
component	NX_CHAR		Details of the component of the sample and/or can Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="n_comp" value=""
sample_compone- nt	sample   can   atmosphere   kit		What type of component we are: "sample   can   atmosphere   kit" Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="n_comp" value=""
concentration	NX_FLOAT	NX_MASS_DENSITY	Concentration of each component Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="n_comp" value=""
volume_fraction	NX_FLOAT		Volume fraction of each component Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="n_comp" value=""
scattering_len- gth_density	NX_FLOAT	NX_SCATTERING_LENGTH_	Scattering length density of each component Dimensions: size="1" DENSITY • dim: index="1" value="n_comp" value=""
unit_cell_class	cubic   tetragonal   orthorhombic   monoclinic   triclinic		In case it is all we know and we want to record it: "cubic   tetragonal   orthorhombic   monoclinic   triclinic"  Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="n_comp" value=""
unit_cell_group	NX_CHAR		Crystallographic point or space group Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="n_comp" value=""
path_length	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	Path length through sample/can for simple case when it does not vary with scattering direction
path_length_wi- ndow	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	Thickness of a beam entry/exit window on the can (mm) - assumed same for entry and exit
thickness	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	sample thickness

Table A.38: (continued)

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
transmission	NXdata		As a function of Wavelength
+ 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	NXlog		temperature_log.value is a link to e.g.
temperature_log	NAIOg		temperature_env.sensor1.value_log.value
temperature_env	NXenvironment		Additional sample temperature environment
cemperacure_env	TVACIIVIIOIIIICII		information
magnetic_field-	NXlog		magnetic_field_log.value is a link to e.g.
_log	NAIOg		magnetic_field_env.sensor1.value_log.value
magnetic_field-	NXenvironment		Additional sample magnetic environment
_env	NACHVIIOIIIICII		information
external_DAC	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	value sent to user's sample setup
external_ADC	NXlog		logged value (or logic state) read from user's
externar_ADC			setup
short_title	NX CHAR		20 character fixed length sample description
SHOLL_CITTE	NA_CHAR		for legends
			Optional rotation angle for the case when the
rotation_angle			powder diagram has been obtained through an
	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	omega-2theta scan like from a traditional
			single detector powder diffractometer

#### A.2.37 NXsensor

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXsensor (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXsensor.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

**SVN Id** Id: NXsensor.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXgeometry, NXlog, NXorientation

documentation This class describes a sensor used to monitor an external condition - the condition itself in described in NXenvironment

Table A.39: Tabular representation of NXsensor[definition]

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
model	NX_CHAR		Sensor identification code/model number
name	NX_CHAR		Name for the sensor
-1	NX CHAR		Short name of sensor used e.g. on monitor
short_name	NA_CHAR	ЛАК	display program
attached_to	NX_CHAR		where sensor is attached to ("sample"   "can")
geometry	NXgeometry		Defines the axes for logged vector quantities if
			they are not the global instrument axes

Table A.39: (continued)

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
measurement	temperature   pH   magnetic_field   "electric field"   conductivity   resistance   voltage   pressure   flow   stress   strain   shear   surface_pressure		name for measured signal
type	NX_CHAR		The type of hardware used for the measurement: e.g. Temperature: "J   K   T   E   R   S   Pt100   Rh/Fe" pH: "Hg/Hg2Cl2   Ag/AgCl   ISFET" Ion selective electrode: "specify species; e.g. Ca2+" Magnetic field: "Hall" Surface pressure: "wilhelmy plate"
run_control	NX_BOOLEAN		Is data collection controlled/synchronised to this quantity: 1=no, 0=to "value", 1=to "value_deriv1" etc.
high_trip_value	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	Upper control bound of sensor reading if using run_control
low_trip_value	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	Lower control bound of sensor reading if using run_control
value	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	nominal setpoint or average value - need [n] as may be a vector Dimensions: apparent size="1" • dim: value="n" value=""
value_deriv1	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	Nominal/average first derivative of value e.g. strain rate - same dimensions as "value" (may be a vector) Dimensions: apparent size="1"  • dim: ref="value" value=""
value_deriv2	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	Nominal/average second derivative of value - same dimensions as "value" (may be a vector) Dimensions: apparent size="1" • dim: ref="value" value=""
value_log	NXlog		Time history of sensor readings
value_deriv1_l-	NXlog		Time history of first derivative of sensor readings
value_deriv2_l-	NXlog		Time history of second derivative of sensor readings
external_field- _brief	"along beam"   "across beam"   transverse   solenoidal   "flow shear gradient"   "flow vorticity"		

Table A.39: (continued)

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
external_field-	NXorientation		For complex external fields not satisfied by
_full	142XOITCHIAGOII		External_field_brief

### A.2.38 NXshape

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXshape (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXshape.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXshape.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: no included classes

**documentation** This is the description of the general shape and size of a component, which may be made up of "numobj" separate elements - it is used by the NXgeometry class

Table A.40: Tabular representation of NXshape[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
shape	nxcylinder   nxbox   nxsphere   nxcone		general shape of a component
size	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	physical extent of the object along its local axes (after NXorientation) with the center of mass at the local origin (after NXtranslation). The meaning and location of these axes will vary according to the value of the "shape" variable. nshapepar defines how many parameters. For the "nxcylinder" type the parameters are (diameter,height). For the "nxbox" type the parameters are (length,width,height). For the "nxsphere" type the parameters are (diameter). Dimensions: apparent size="2"  • dim: value="numobj" value=""  • dim: value="nshapepar" value=""

A description of each NeXus Base Class is given.

#### A.2.39 NXsource

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXsource (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXsource.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXsource.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXdata, NXgeometry, NXnote

**documentation** Template of the neutron or x-ray source, insertion devices and/or moderators.

Table A.41: Tabular representation of NXsource[definition]

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
			Effective distance from sample Distance as
			seen by radiation from sample. This number
distance	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	should be negative to signify that it is upstream
			of the sample.
name	NX_CHAR		Name of source
@short_name	NX_CHAR		short name for source, perhaps the acronym
	"Spallation Neutron		
	Source"		
	l "Pulsed Reactor		
	Neutron Source"		
	"Reactor Neutron		
	Source"		
	"Synchrotron X-ray		
	Source"   "Pulsed Muon		4 6 1:-4:
type	Source"		type of radiation source
	"Rotating Anode		
	X-ray"		
	"Fixed Tube X-ray"		
	"UV Laser"		
	"Free-Electron Laser"		
	"Optical Laser"		
	optical Baser		
	neutron		
	l x-ray		
	muon		
probe	l electron		type of radiation probe
	ultraviolet		
	"visible light"		
	NV ELOAT	MV DOWED	C
power current	NX_FLOAT NX_FLOAT	NX_POWER NX_CURRENT	Source power Accelerator current
voltage	NX_FLOAT	NX_VOLTAGE	Accelerator voltage
frequency	NX_FLOAT	NX_FREQUENCY	Frequency of pulsed source
period	NX_FLOAT	NX_PERIOD	Period of pulsed source
1	Ta		r
	l W		
	depleted_U		
target_material	enriched_U		Pulsed source target material
	l Hg		
	l Pb		
	IC		
			any source/facility related messages/events
notes	NXnote		that occurred during the experiment
	NV ELOAT	NV TIME	width of governmental
pulse_width	NX_FLOAT	NX_TIME	width of source pulse

Table A.41: (continued)

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
pulse_shape	NXdata		source pulse shape
mode	"Single Bunch"   "Multi Bunch"		source operating mode
top_up	NX_BOOLEAN		Is the synchrotron operating in top_up mode?
geometry	NXgeometry		"Engineering" location of source

#### A.2.40 NXtranslation

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXtranslation (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXtranslation.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXtranslation.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXgeometry

documentation This is the description for the general spatial location of a component - it is used by the NX geometry class

Table A.42: Tabular representation of NXtranslation[definition]

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
geometry	NXgeometry		Link to other object if we are relative, else absent
distances	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	(x,y,z)}{This field and the angle field describe the position of a component. For absolute position, the origin is the scattering center (where a perfectly aligned sample would be) with the z-axis pointing downstream and the y-axis pointing gravitationally up. For a relative position the NXtranslation is taken into account before the NXorientation. The axes are right-handed and orthonormal. Dimensions: apparent size="2"  • dim: value="numobj" value=""  • dim: value="3" value=""

A description of each NeXus Base Class is given.

#### A.2.41 NXuser

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXuser (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXuser.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXuser.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

NeXus Definition Language NXDL

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: no included classes

**documentation** Template of user's contact information. The format allows more than one user with the same affiliation and contact information, but a second NXuser group should be used if they have different affiliations, etc.

Table A.43: Tabular representation of NXuser[definition]

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
name	NX_CHAR		Name of user responsible for this entry
role	NX_CHAR		Role of user responsible for this entry. Suggested roles are "local_contact", "principal_investigator", and "proposer"
affiliation	NX_CHAR		Affiliation of user
address	NX_CHAR		Address of user
telephone_numb- er	NX_CHAR		Telephone number of user
fax_number	NX_CHAR		Fax number of user
email	NX_CHAR		Email of user
facility_user id	NX_CHAR		facility based unique identifier for this person e.g. their identification code on the facility address/contact database

A description of each NeXus Base Class is given.

### A.2.42 NXvelocity\_selector

category base (base class)

NXDL source: NXvelocity\_selector (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/base\_classes/NXvelocity\_selector.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0

SVN Id Id: NXvelocity\_selector.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXgeometry

documentation This is the description for a (typically neutron) velocity selector

Table A.44: Tabular representation of NXvelocity\_selector[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
type	NX_CHAR		velocity selector type

Table A.44: (continued)

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
rotation_speed	NX_FLOAT	NX_FREQUENCY	velocity selector rotation speed
radius	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	radius at beam centre
spwidth	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	spoke width at beam centre
length	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	rotor length
num	NX_INT	NX_UNITLESS	number of spokes/lamella
twist	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	twist angle along axis
table	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	offset vertical angle
height	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	input beam height
width	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	input beam width
wavelength	NX_FLOAT	NX_WAVELENGTH	wavelength
wavelength_spr-	NX FLOAT	NX WAVELENGTH	deviation FWHM /Wavelength
ead	NA_ILOAI	NA_WAVELENGTH	deviation i withvi / wavelength
geometry	NXgeometry		

# A.3 NeXus Application Classes

A description of each NeXus Application Class is given.

#### A.3.1 NXarchive

category application (application definition)

NXDL source: NXarchive (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/applications/NXarchive.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0b

SVN Id Id: NXarchive.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

NeXus Definition Language NXDL

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXentry, NXinstrument, NXsample, NXsource, NXuser

documentation This is a definition for data to be archived by ICAT

Table A.45: Tabular representation of NXarchive[definition]

pe	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
		Look for special case table entry[NXentry]
Centry		(within NXarchive[definition]) below.
C_CHAR		
(e	entry	entry

#### A.3.1.1 Special case table: entry[NXentry] (within NXarchive[definition])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
title	NX_CHAR		
experiment_ide-	NX_CHAR		unique identifier for the experiment
ntifer	NA_CHAR		unique identifier for the experiment
experiment_des-	NX CHAR		Brief description of the experiment and its
cription	NA_CHAR		objectives
collection_ide-	NX_CHAR		ID of user or DAQ define group of data files
ntifier	NA_CHAR		, ,
collection_des-	NX_CHAR		Brief summary of the collection, including
cription	WA_CIIIIK		grouping criteria
entry_identifi-	NX_CHAR		unique identifier for this measurement as
er			provided by the facility
start_time	NX_DATE_TIME		
end_time	NX_DATE_TIME		
duration	NX_FLOAT	NX_TIME	
collection_time	NX_FLOAT	NX_TIME	
run_cycle	NX_CHAR		
revision	NX CHAR		revision ID of this file, may be after
164131011	WA_CIIIIK		recalibration, reprocessing etc.
			Official NeXus DTD or NXDL schema to
definition	NXmonopd		which this file conforms
program	NX_CHAR		The program and version used for generating
program	WA_CIIIIK		this file
@version	NX_CHAR		
release_date	NX_CHAR	NX_TIME	when this file is to be released into PD
			Look for special case table user[NXuser]
user	NXuser		(within entry[NXentry]) below.
			Look for special case table
instrument	NXinstrument		instrument[NXinstrument] (within
TITOCT UNICITO	1 12 XIII SU UIII CIII		entry[NXentry]) below.
			Look for special case table
sample	NXsample		sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])
Sambre	142Ksampic		below.

# A.3.1.2 Special case table: user[NXuser] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.47: Tabular representation of user[NXuser] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
name	NX_CHAR		
role	NX_CHAR		role of the user
facility_user id	NX_CHAR		ID of the user in the facility burocracy database

### A.3.1.3 Special case table: instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])

 $Table \ A.48: \ Tabular \ representation \ of \ instrument[NXinstrument] \ (within \ entry[NXentry])$ 

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
			Look for special case table [NXsource]
	NXsource		(within instrument[NXinstrument]) below.
name	NX_CHAR		
description	NX_CHAR		Brief description of the instrument

# A.3.1.4 Special case table: [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

 $\begin{tabular}{lll} Table & A.49: & Tabular & representation & of & [NX source] & (within & instrument[NX instrument]) \\ \end{tabular}$ 

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
	"Spallation Neutron		
	Source"		
	"Pulsed Reactor		
	Neutron Source"		
	"Reactor Neutron		
	Source"		
	"Synchrotraon X-Ray		
type	Source"		
	l "Pulsed Muon		
	Source"		
	"Rotating Anode		
	X-Ray"		
	"Fixed Tube X-Ray"		
name	NX_CHAR		
	neutron		
probe	l x-ray		
	l electron		

# A.3.1.5 Special case table: sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.50: Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
name	NX_CHAR		Descriptive name of sample
sample_id	NX_CHAR		Unique database id of the sample
description	NX_CHAR		
type	sample   sample+can   "calibration sample"   "normalisation sample"   "simulated data"   none   sample_environment		
chemical_formu- la	NX_CHAR		Chemical formular fomatted according to CIF conventions

Table	A 50.	(continu	(bai
Table	A.50:	(contint	lea)

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
preparation_da-	NX CHAR	NX TIME	
te	TVA_CII/IK	TVX_THVIL	
situation	NX_CHAR		Description of the environment the sample is in: air, vacuum, oxiding atmosphere, dehyrated, etc.
temperature	NX_FLOAT	NX_TEMPERATURE	
magnetic_field	NX_FLOAT	NX_CURRENT	
electric_field	NX_FLOAT	NX_VOLTAGE	
stress_field	NX_FLOAT	NX_UNITLESS	
pressure	NX_FLOAT	NX_PRESSURE	

A description of each NeXus Application Class is given.

## A.3.2 NXgisas

category application (application definition)

NXDL source: NXgisas (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/applications/NXgisas.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0b

**SVN Id** 

NeXus Definition Language NXDL

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXdata, NXdetector, NXentry, NXinstrument, NXmonitor, NXmonochromator, NXsample, NXsource

**documentation** This is an application definition for raw data from a grazing incidence small angle diffractometer GISAS for either x-ray or neutrons

Table A.51: Tabular representation of NXgisas[definition]

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
entry	NXentry		Look for special case table entry[NXentry] (within NXgisas[definition]) below.

# A.3.2.1 Special case table: entry[NXentry] (within NXgisas[definition])

Table A.52: Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXgisas[definition])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
title	NX_CHAR		
start_time	NX_DATE_TIME		
end_time	NX_DATE_TIME		

Table A.52: (continued)

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
definition	NXgisas		Official NeXus DTD or NXDL schema to which this file conforms
instrument	NXinstrument		Look for special case table instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) below.
sample	NXsample		Look for special case table sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) below.
control	NXmonitor		Look for special case table control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) below.
data	NXdata		

### A.3.2.2 Special case table: instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.53: Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
name	NX_CHAR		
source	NXsource		Look for special case table source[NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) below.
monochromator	NXmonochromator		Look for special case table monochromator[NXmonochromator] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) below.
detector	NXdetector		Look for special case table detector[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) below.

# A.3.2.3 Special case table: source[NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

 $\label{thm:continuity} \begin{array}{ll} Table \ A.54: & Tabular \ representation \ of \ source[NX source] \ (within \ instrument[NX instrument]) \end{array}$ 

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
type	NX_CHAR		
name	NX_CHAR		
nacho	neutron		
probe	l x-ray		

# A.3.2.4 Special case table: monochromator[NXmonochromator] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

Table A.55: Tabular representation of monochromator[NXmonochromator] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
wavelength	NX_FLOAT	NX_WAVELENGTH	

#### A.3.2.5 Special case table: detector[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

 $\label{lem:continuity} Table \ A.56: \quad Tabular \ representation \ of \ detector[NX detector] \ (within \ instrument[NX instrument])$ 

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
data	NX_INT		Dimensions: size="2" • dim: index="1" value="xsize" value="" • dim: index="2" value="ysize" value=""
distance	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	
x_pixel_size	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	
y_pixel_size	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	

### A.3.2.6 Special case table: sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.57: Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
name	NX_CHAR		Descriptive name of sample
polar_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	In NeXus this is the gazing incidence angle on the sample

### A.3.2.7 Special case table: control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])

 $\begin{tabular}{lll} Table A.58: & Tabular representation of control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) & Tabular representation of control[NXentry]) & Tabular representation of control[NXentry]) & Tabular representation of control[NXentry]) & Tabular representation of control[NXentry]] & Tabular represe$ 

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
			Count to a preset value based on either clock
mode	monitor		time (timer) or received monitor counts
mode	l timer		(monitor).
preset	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	preset value for time or monitor
integral	NX_INT		Total integral monitor counts
time_of_flight	NX_FLOAT	NX_TIME_OF_FLIGHT	Time channels
data	NX_INT		Monitor counts in each time channel

A description of each NeXus Application Class is given.

# A.3.3 NXiqproc

category application (application definition)

NXDL source: NXiqproc (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/applications/NXiqproc.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0b

SVN Id Id: NXiqproc.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXdata, NXentry, NXinstrument, NXparameters, NXprocess, NXsample, NXsource

documentation Actually this is a template from which to start an application definition.

Table A.59: Tabular representation of NXiqproc[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
			Look for special case table [NXentry] (within
	NXentry		NXiqproc[definition]) below.
@entry	NX_CHAR		

# A.3.3.1 Special case table: [NXentry] (within NXiqproc[definition])

Table A.60: Tabular representation of [NXentry] (within NXiqproc[definition])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
title	NX_CHAR		
definition	NXiqproc		Official NeXus DTD or NXDL schema to which this file conforms
instrument	NXinstrument		Look for special case table instrument[NXinstrument] (within [NXentry]) below.
	NXsample		Look for special case table [NXsample] (within [NXentry]) below.
reduction	NXprocess		Look for special case table reduction[NXprocess] (within [NXentry]) below.
	NXdata		Look for special case table [NXdata] (within [NXentry]) below.

#### A.3.3.2 Special case table: instrument[NXinstrument] (within [NXentry])

Table A.61: Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within [NX-entry])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
	NXsource		Look for special case table [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) below.
name	NX_CHAR		Name of the instrument from which this data was reduced.

### A.3.3.3 Special case table: [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
type	NX_CHAR		
name	NX_CHAR		
	neutron		
probe	l x-ray		
	l electron		

### A.3.3.4 Special case table: [NXsample] (within [NXentry])

Table A.63: Tabular representation of [NXsample] (within [NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
name	NX_CHAR		Descriptive name of sample

# A.3.3.5 Special case table: reduction[NXprocess] (within [NXentry])

Table A.64: Tabular representation of reduction[NXprocess] (within [NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
program	NX_CHAR		
version	NX_CHAR		
input	NXparameters		Input parameters for the reduction program used  Look for special case table input[NXparameters] (within reduction[NXprocess]) below.
output	NXparameters		Eventual output parameters from the data reduction program used

#### A.3.3.6 Special case table: input[NXparameters] (within reduction[NXprocess])

Table A.65: Tabular representation of input[NXparameters] (within reduction[NXprocess])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
filenames	NX_CHAR		Raw data files used to generate this I(Q)

#### A.3.3.7 Special case table: [NXdata] (within [NXentry])

Table A.66: Tabular representation of [NXdata] (within [NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
data	NX_INT		This is I(Q). The client has to analyse the dimensions of I(Q). Often, multiple I(Q) for various environment conditions are measured; that would be the first dimension. Q can be multidimensional, this accounts for the further dimensions in the data Dimensions: size="3"  • dim: index="1" value="NE" value=""  • dim: index="2" value="NQX" value=""  • dim: index="3" value="NQY" value=""
variable	NX_CHAR		Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="NE" value=""
@varied_varia- ble	NX_CHAR		The real name of the varied variable in the first dim of data, temperature, P, MF etc
фх	NX_CHAR		Values for the first dimension of Q Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="NQX" value=""
dÀ	NX_CHAR		Values for the second dimension of Q Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="NQY" value=""

A description of each NeXus Application Class is given.

### A.3.4 NXmonopd

category application (application definition)

NXDL source: NXmonopd (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/applications/NXmonopd.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0b

SVN Id Id: NXmonopd.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class:

other classes included: NXcrystal, NXdata, NXdetector, NXinstrument, NXmonitor, NXsample, NXsource

**documentation** Monochromatic Neutron and X-Ray Powder Diffraction. Instrument definition for a powder diffractometer at a monochromatic neutron or X-ray beam. This is both suited for a powder diffractometer with a single detector or a powder diffractometer with a position sensitive detector.

Table A.67: Tabular representation of NXmonopd[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
title	NX_CHAR		
start_time	NX_DATE_TIME		
definition	NXmonopd		Official NeXus DTD or NXDL schema to which this file conforms
	NXinstrument		Look for special case table [NXinstrument] (within NXmonopd[definition]) below.
	NXsample		Look for special case table [NXsample] (within NXmonopd[definition]) below.
	NXmonitor		Look for special case table [NXmonitor] (within NXmonopd[definition]) below.
	NXdata		

### A.3.4.1 Special case table: [NXinstrument] (within NXmonopd[definition])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
	NXsource		Look for special case table [NXsource] (within [NXinstrument]) below.
	NXcrystal		Look for special case table [NXcrystal] (within [NXinstrument]) below.
	NXdetector		Look for special case table [NXdetector] (within [NXinstrument]) below.

### A.3.4.2 Special case table: [NXsource] (within [NXinstrument])

Table A.69: Tabular representation of [NXsource] (within [NXinstrument])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
type	NX_CHAR		
name	NX_CHAR		
	neutron		
probe	l x-ray		
	l electron		

### A.3.4.3 Special case table: [NXcrystal] (within [NXinstrument])

Table A.70: Tabular representation of [NXcrystal] (within [NXinstrument])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
wavelength	NX_FLOAT	NX_WAVELENGTH	Optimum diffracted wavelength Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="i" value=""

# A.3.4.4 Special case table: [NXdetector] (within [NXinstrument])

Table A.71: Tabular representation of [NXdetector] (within [NXinstrument])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
polar_angle	NX_FLOAT		where ndet = number of detectors Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="ndet" value=""
data	NX_INT		detector signal (usually counts) are already corrected for detector efficiency Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="ndet" value=""

### A.3.4.5 Special case table: [NXsample] (within NXmonopd[definition])

Table A.72: Tabular representation of [NXsample] (within NX-monopd[definition])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
name	NX_CHAR		Descriptive name of sample
rotation_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	Optional rotation angle for the case when the powder diagram has been obtained through an omega-2theta scan like from a traditional single detector powder diffractometer

#### A.3.4.6 Special case table: [NXmonitor] (within NXmonopd[definition])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
mode	monitor   timer		Count to a preset value based on either clock time (timer) or received monitor counts (monitor).
preset	NX_FLOAT		preset value for time or monitor
integral	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	Total integral monitor counts

A description of each NeXus Application Class is given.

#### A.3.5 NXrefscan

category application (application definition)

NXDL source: NXrefscan (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/applications/NXrefscan.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0b

**SVN Id** 

NeXus Definition Language NXDL

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXdata, NXdetector, NXentry, NXinstrument, NXmonitor, NXmonochromator, NXsample, NXsource

**documentation** This is an application definition for a monochromatic scanning reflectometer. It does not have the information to calculate the resolution since it does not have any apertures.

Table A.74: Tabular representation of NXrefscan[definition]

Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
NXentry		Look for special case table entry[NXentry] (within NXrefscan[definition]) below.

### A.3.5.1 Special case table: entry[NXentry] (within NXrefscan[definition])

Table A.75: Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXrefs-can[definition])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
title	NX_CHAR		
start_time	NX_DATE_TIME		
end_time	NX_DATE_TIME		
definition	NXrefscan		Official NeXus DTD or NXDL schema to
delinition	INATEISCAII		which this file conforms
			Look for special case table
instrument	NXinstrument		instrument[NXinstrument] (within
Instrument	NAMSHUMEN		entry[NXentry]) below.
			Look for special case table
	MVaamula		sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])
sample	NXsample		below.
			Look for special case table
	NINZ		control[NXmonitor] (within
control	NXmonitor		entry[NXentry]) below.
data	NXdata		

#### A.3.5.2 Special case table: instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.76: Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
	NXsource		Look for special case table [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) below.
monochromator	NXmonochromator		Look for special case table monochromator[NXmonochromator] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) below.
	NXdetector		Look for special case table [NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) below.

# A.3.5.3 Special case table: [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

Table A.77: Tabular representation of [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
type	NX_CHAR		
name	NX_CHAR		
	neutron		
probe	l x-ray		
	l electron		

#### A.3.5.4 Special case table: monochromator[NXmonochromator] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

Table A.78: Tabular representation of monochromator[NXmonochromator] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
wavelength	NX_FLOAT	NX_WAVELENGTH	

# A.3.5.5 Special case table: [NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
data	NX_INT		Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="NP" value=""
polar_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="NP" value=""

#### A.3.5.6 Special case table: sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.80: Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
name	NX_CHAR		Descriptive name of sample
rotation_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="NP" value=""

#### A.3.5.7 Special case table: control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.81: Tabular representation of control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
mode	monitor   timer		Count to a preset value based on either clock time (timer) or received monitor counts (monitor).
preset	NX_FLOAT		preset value for time or monitor
data	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	Monitor counts for each step Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="NP" value=""

A description of each NeXus Application Class is given.

#### A.3.6 NXreftof

category application (application definition)

NXDL source: NXreftof (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/applications/NXreftof.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0b

**SVN Id** 

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXdata, NXdetector, NXdisk\_chopper, NXentry, NXinstrument, NXmonitor, NXsample

documentation This is an application definition for raw data from a TOF reflectometer.

Table A.82: Tabular representation of NXreftof[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
entry	NXentry		Look for special case table entry[NXentry] (within NXreftof[definition]) below.

### A.3.6.1 Special case table: entry[NXentry] (within NXreftof[definition])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
title	NX_CHAR		
start_time	NX_DATE_TIME		
end_time	NX_DATE_TIME		
definition	NXreftof		Official NeXus DTD or NXDL schema to which this file conforms
instrument	NXinstrument		Look for special case table instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) below.
sample	NXsample		Look for special case table sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) below.
control	NXmonitor		Look for special case table control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) below.
data	NXdata		

### A.3.6.2 Special case table: instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])

 $Table \ A.84: \ Tabular \ representation \ of \ instrument[NXinstrument] \ (within \ entry[NXentry])$ 

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
name	NX_CHAR		
chopper	NXdisk_chopper		Look for special case table chopper[NXdisk_chopper] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) below.
detector	NXdetector		Look for special case table detector[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) below.

### A.3.6.3 Special case table: chopper[NXdisk\_chopper] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

Table A.85: Tabular representation of chopper[NXdisk\_chopper] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
distance	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	Distance between chopper and sample

## A.3.6.4 Special case table: detector[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

 $Table \ A.86: \quad Tabular \ representation \ of \ detector[NX detector] \ (within \ instrument[NX instrument])$ 

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
data	NX_INT		Dimensions: size="3"  • dim: index="1" value="xsize" value=""  • dim: index="2" value="ysize" value=""  • dim: index="3" value="nTOF" value=""
time_of_flight	NX_FLOAT	NX_TIME_OF_FLIGHT	Array of time values for each bin in a time-of-flight measurement Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="nTOF" value=""
distance	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	
polar_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	
x_pixel_size	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	
y_pixel_size	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	

## A.3.6.5 Special case table: sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.87: Tabular representation of sample [NX sample] (within entry [NX entry])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
name	NX_CHAR		Descriptive name of sample
rotation_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	

## A.3.6.6 Special case table: control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.88: Tabular representation of control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
mode	monitor   timer		Count to a preset value based on either clock time (timer) or received monitor counts (monitor).
preset	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	preset value for time or monitor
integral	NX_INT		Total integral monitor counts
time_of_flight	NX_FLOAT	NX_TIME_OF_FLIGHT	Time channels
data	NX_INT		Monitor counts in each time channel

A description of each NeXus Application Class is given.

#### A.3.7 NXsas

category application (application definition)

NXDL source: NXsas (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/applications/NXsas.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0b

**SVN Id** 

NeXus Definition Language NXDL

extends class: NXobject

**other classes included:** NXcollimator, NXdata, NXdetector, NXentry, NXgeometry, NXinstrument, NXmonitor, NXmonochromator, NXsample, NXshape, NXsource

**documentation** This is an application definition for 2-D small angle scattering data collected with a monochromatic beam and an area detector. It is meant to be suitable both for neutron SANS and X-ray SAXS data.

Table A.89: Tabular representation of NXsas[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
	NXentry		Look for special case table [NXentry] (within NXsas[definition]) below.
@entry	NX_CHAR		NeXus convention is to use "entry1", "entry2", for analysis software to locate each entry

## A.3.7.1 Special case table: [NXentry] (within NXsas[definition])

Table A.90: Tabular representation of [NXentry] (within NXsas[definition])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
title	NX_CHAR		
start_time	NX_DATE_TIME		
end_time	NX_DATE_TIME		
definition	NXsas		Official NeXus DTD or NXDL schema to which this file conforms
instrument	NXinstrument		Look for special case table instrument[NXinstrument] (within [NXentry]) below.
sample	NXsample		Look for special case table sample[NXsample] (within [NXentry]) below.
control	NXmonitor		Look for special case table control[NXmonitor] (within [NXentry]) below.
data	NXdata		

## A.3.7.2 Special case table: instrument[NXinstrument] (within [NXentry])

Table A.91: Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within [NX-entry])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
			Look for special case table <b>source[NXsource]</b>
source	NXsource		(within instrument[NXinstrument]) below.
			Look for special case table
monochromator	NXmonochromator		monochromator[NXmonochromator]
MONOCHIOMACOI	NAMONOCHIOMATO		(within instrument[NXinstrument]) below.
			Look for special case table
collimator	NXcollimator		collimator[NXcollimator] (within
COIIIMACOI	NACOIIIIIatoi		instrument[NXinstrument]) below.
			Look for special case table
dataatan	NXdetector		detector[NXdetector] (within
detector	NAdelector		<pre>instrument[NXinstrument]) below.</pre>
name	NX_CHAR		Name of the instrument actually used to
	NA_CHAR		perform the experiment

## A.3.7.3 Special case table: source[NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

 $\label{thm:continuity} \begin{array}{lll} Table & A.92: & Tabular \ representation \ of \ source[NX source] \ (within \ instrument[NX instrument]) \end{array}$ 

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
type	NX_CHAR		type of radiation source
name	NX_CHAR		Name of the radiation source
nroho	neutron		
probe	l x-ray		

## A.3.7.4 Special case table: monochromator[NXmonochromator] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

Table A.93: Tabular representation of monochromator[NXmonochromator] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
wavelength	NX_FLOAT	NX_WAVELENGTH	The wavelength of the radiation
rioria langth ann			delta_lambda/lambda. The wavelength spread.
wavelength_spr-	NX_FLOAT		Important with neutrons to calculate
ead			resolution.

## A.3.7.5 Special case table: collimator[NXcollimator] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

Table A.94: Tabular representation of collimator[NXcollimator] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
geometry	NXgeometry		Look for special case table geometry[NXgeometry] (within collimator[NXcollimator]) below.

## A.3.7.6 Special case table: geometry[NXgeometry] (within collimator[NXcollimator])

 $Table\ A.95:\ Tabular\ representation\ of\ geometry [NX geometry]\ (within\ collimator[NX collimator])$ 

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
shape	NXshape		Look for special case table shape[NXshape] (within geometry[NXgeometry]) below.

## A.3.7.7 Special case table: shape[NXshape] (within geometry[NXgeometry])

Table A.96: Tabular representation of shape[NXshape] (within geometry[NXgeometry])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
ghano	nxcylinder		
shape	l nxbox		
size	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	The collimation length

## A.3.7.8 Special case table: detector[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

Table A.97: Tabular representation of detector[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
data	NX_INT		This is area detector data, of number of x-pixel versus number of y-pixels. Since the beam center is to be determined as a step of data reduction, it is not necessary to document or assume the position of the beam center in acquired data.  Dimensions: size="2"  • dim: index="1" value="nXPixel" value=""  • dim: index="2" value="nYPixel" value=""
distance	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	The distance between detector and sample
x_pixel_size	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	Physical size of a pixel in x-direction
y_pixel_size	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	Size of a pixel in y direction

#### A.3.7.9 Special case table: sample[NXsample] (within [NXentry])

Table A.98: Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within [NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
name	NX_CHAR		Descriptive name of sample
thickness	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	sample thickness

#### A.3.7.10 Special case table: control[NXmonitor] (within [NXentry])

Table A.99: Tabular representation of control[NXmonitor] (within [NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
mode	monitor   timer		Count to a preset value based on either clock time (timer) or received monitor counts (monitor).
preset	NX_FLOAT		preset value for time or monitor
integral	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	Total integral monitor counts

A description of each NeXus Application Class is given.

#### A.3.8 NXscan

category application (application definition)

NXDL source: NXscan (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/applications/NXscan.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0b

**SVN Id** 

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXdata, NXdetector, NXentry, NXinstrument, NXmonitor, NXsample

documentation Application definition for a generic scan instrument. This definition is more an example then a stringent definition as the content of a given NeXus scan file needs to differ for different types of scans. This example definition shows a scan like done on a rotation camera: the sample is rotated and a detector image, the rotation angle and a monitor value is stored at each step in the scan. In the following I use the symbol NP as a placeholder for the number of scan points. These are the rules for storing scan data in NeXus files which are implemented in this example: - Each value varied throughout a scan is stored as an array of length NP at its respective location within the NeXus hierarchy. - For area detectors, NP is the first dimension, example for a detector of 256x256: data[NP,256,256] - The NXdata group contains links to all variables varied in the scan and the data. This to give an equivalent to the more familiar classical tabular representation of scans. These rules are there for a reason: HDF allows the first dimension of a data set to be unlimited. This means the data can be appended too. Thus a NeXus file built according to the rules given above can be used in the following way: - At the start of a scan, write all the static information. - At each scan point append new data from varied variables and the detector to the file.

Table A.100: Tabular representation of NXscan[definition]

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
	NXentry		Look for special case table [NXentry] (within NXscan[definition]) below.

## A.3.8.1 Special case table: [NXentry] (within NXscan[definition])

Table A.101: Tabular representation of [NXentry] (within NXscan[definition])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
title	NX_CHAR		
start_time	NX_DATE_TIME		
end_time	NX_DATE_TIME		
definition	NX_CHAR		Identifies the NXDL that describes the structure of this data file
@URL	NX_CHAR		Uniform Resource Locator for the base_class, application, or contributed NXDL that describes the structure of this data file
	NXinstrument		Look for special case table [NXinstrument] (within [NXentry]) below.
	NXsample		Look for special case table [NXsample] (within [NXentry]) below.
	NXmonitor		Look for special case table [NXmonitor] (within [NXentry]) below.
	NXdata		

## A.3.8.2 Special case table: [NXinstrument] (within [NXentry])

Table A.102: Tabular representation of [NXinstrument] (within [NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
	NXdetector		Look for special case table [NXdetector] (within [NXinstrument]) below.

## A.3.8.3 Special case table: [NXdetector] (within [NXinstrument])

Table A.103: Tabular representation of [NXdetector] (within [NXinstrument])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
			Dimensions: size="3"
			• dim: index="1" value="NP" value=""
data	NX_INT		• dim: index="2" value="xdim" value=""
			• dim: index="3" value="ydim" value=""

#### A.3.8.4 Special case table: [NXsample] (within [NXentry])

Table A.104: Tabular representation of [NXsample] (within [NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
rotation_angle	NX_FLOAT		Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="NP" value=""

#### A.3.8.5 Special case table: [NXmonitor] (within [NXentry])

Table A.105: Tabular representation of [NXmonitor] (within [NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
			Dimensions: size="1"
data	NX_INT		• dim: index="1" value="NP" value=""

A description of each NeXus Application Class is given.

#### A.3.9 NXtas

category application (application definition)

NXDL source: NXtas (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/applications/NXtas.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0b

SVN Id Id: NXtas.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXcrystal, NXdata, NXdetector, NXentry, NXinstrument, NXmonitor, NXsample, NXsource

**documentation** This is an application definition for a triple axis spectrometer. It is for the trademark scan of the TAS, the Q-E scan. For your alignment scans use the rules in NXscan.

Table A.106: Tabular representation of NXtas[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
entry	NXentry		Look for special case table entry[NXentry] (within NXtas[definition]) below.

## A.3.9.1 Special case table: entry[NXentry] (within NXtas[definition])

Table A.107: Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NX-tas[definition])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
title	NX_CHAR		
start_time	NX_DATE_TIME		
definition	NXtas		Official NeXus DTD or NXDL schema to which this file conforms
	NXinstrument		Look for special case table [NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) below.
	NXsample		Look for special case table [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) below.
	NXmonitor		Look for special case table [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) below.
	NXdata		One of the ei,ef,qh,qk,ql,en should get a primary=1 attribute to denote the main scan axis

## A.3.9.2 Special case table: [NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.108: Tabular representation of [NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
	NXsource		Look for special case table [NXsource] (within [NXinstrument]) below.
monochromator	NXcrystal		Look for special case table monochromator[NXcrystal] (within [NXinstrument]) below.
analyzer	NXcrystal		Look for special case table analyzer[NXcrystal] (within [NXinstrument]) below.
	NXdetector		Look for special case table [NXdetector] (within [NXinstrument]) below.

## A.3.9.3 Special case table: [NXsource] (within [NXinstrument])

Table A.109: Tabular representation of [NXsource] (within [NXinstrument])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
name	NX_CHAR		
probe	neutron		
	l x-ray		

## A.3.9.4 Special case table: monochromator[NXcrystal] (within [NXinstrument])

Table A.110: Tabular representation of monochromator[NXcrystal] (within [NXinstrument])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
ei	NX_FLOAT	NX_ENERGY	Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="np" value=""
rotation_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="np" value=""

#### A.3.9.5 Special case table: analyzer[NXcrystal] (within [NXinstrument])

Table A.111: Tabular representation of analyzer[NXcrystal] (within [NXinstrument])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
ef	NX_FLOAT	NX_ENERGY	Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="np" value=""
rotation_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="np" value=""
polar_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="np" value=""

## A.3.9.6 Special case table: [NXdetector] (within [NXinstrument])

Table A.112: Tabular representation of [NXdetector] (within [NXinstrument])

Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
		Dimensions: size="1"
NX_INT		• dim: index="1" value="np" value=""
		Dimensions: size="1"
NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	• dim: index="1" value="np" value=""
_	_	dilli lidex 1 value ip value
	NX_INT	NX_INT

## A.3.9.7 Special case table: [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.113: Tabular representation of [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
name	NX_CHAR		Descriptive name of sample
qh	NX_FLOAT	NX_DIMENSIONLESS	Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="np" value=""

Table A.113: (continued)

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
qk	NX_FLOAT	NX_DIMENSIONLESS	Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="np" value=""
ql	NX_FLOAT	NX_DIMENSIONLESS	Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="np" value=""
en	NX_FLOAT	NX_ENERGY	Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="np" value=""
rotation_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="np" value=""
polar_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="np" value=""
sgu	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="np" value=""
sgl	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="np" value=""
unit_cell	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="6" value=""
orientation_ma- trix	NX_FLOAT	NX_DIMENSIONLESS	Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="9" value=""

## A.3.9.8 Special case table: [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.114: Tabular representation of [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
mode	monitor   timer		Count to a preset value based on either clock time (timer) or received monitor counts (monitor).
preset	NX_FLOAT		preset value for time or monitor
data	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	Total integral monitor counts Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="np" value=""

A description of each NeXus Application Class is given.

## A.3.10 NXtofraw

category application (application definition)

NXDL source: NXtofraw (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/applications/NXtofraw.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0b

**SVN Id** Id: NXtofraw.nxdl.xml 458 2010-01-13 09:19:56Z Pete Jemian

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXdata, NXdetector, NXentry, NXinstrument, NXmonitor, NXsample, NXuser

documentation This is a application definition for raw data from a generic TOF instrument

Table A.115: Tabular representation of NXtofraw[definition]

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
entry	NXentry		Look for special case table entry[NXentry] (within NXtofraw[definition]) below.

## A.3.10.1 Special case table: entry[NXentry] (within NXtofraw[definition])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
title	NX_CHAR		
start_time	NX_DATE_TIME		
definition	NXtofraw		Official NeXus DTD or NXDL schema to which this file conforms
duration	NX_FLOAT		
run_number	NX_INT		
user	NXuser		Look for special case table user[NXuser] (within entry[NXentry]) below.
	NXinstrument		Look for special case table [NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) below.
	NXsample		Look for special case table [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) below.
	NXmonitor		Look for special case table [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) below.
data	NXdata		

## A.3.10.2 Special case table: user[NXuser] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.117: Tabular representation of user[NXuser] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
name	NX_CHAR		

## A.3.10.3 Special case table: [NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.118: Tabular representation of [NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
detector	NXdetector		Look for special case table detector[NXdetector] (within [NXinstrument]) below.

## A.3.10.4 Special case table: detector[NXdetector] (within [NXinstrument])

Table A.119: Tabular representation of detector [NX detector] (within [NX instrument])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
data	NX_INT		Dimensions: size="2" • dim: index="1" value="ndet" value="" • dim: index="2" value="ntimechan" value=""
detector_number	NX_INT		Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="ndet" value=""
distance	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	distance to sample for each detector Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="ndet" value=""
time_of_flight	NX_FLOAT	NX_TIME_OF_FLIGHT	Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="ntimechan" value=""
polar_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	polar angle for each detector element Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="ndet" value=""
azimuthal_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	azimuthal angle for each detector element Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="ndet" value=""
arrangement	NX_INT		This is new!! This array maps detector numbers to a position relative to a possible area geometry of the detector. A linear arrangement is covered too; then ny is 1 Dimensions: size="2"  • dim: index="1" value="nx" value=""  • dim: index="2" value="ny" value=""

## A.3.10.5 Special case table: [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.120: Tabular representation of [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
name	NX_CHAR		Descriptive name of sample

#### Table A.120: (continued)

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
nature	powder   liquid   "single crystal"		

#### A.3.10.6 Special case table: [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.121: Tabular representation of [NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
mode	monitor   timer		Count to a preset value based on either clock time (timer) or received monitor counts (monitor).
preset	NX_FLOAT		preset value for time or monitor
distance	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	
data	NX_INT		Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="ntimechan" value=""
time_of_flight	NX_FLOAT	NX_TIME_OF_FLIGHT	Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="ntimechan" value=""

A description of each NeXus Application Class is given.

#### A.3.11 NXtomo

category application (application definition)

NXDL source: NXtomo (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/applications/NXtomo.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0b

**SVN Id** 

NeXus Definition Language NXDL

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXdata, NXdetector, NXentry, NXinstrument, NXmonitor, NXsample, NXsource

**documentation** This is the application definition for x-ray or neutron tomography raw data. In tomography first some dark field images are measured, some bright field images and, of course the sample. In order to properly sort the order of the images taken, a sequence number is stored with each image.

Table A.122: Tabular representation of NXtomo[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
entry	NXentry		Look for special case table entry[NXentry] (within NXtomo[definition]) below.

## A.3.11.1 Special case table: entry[NXentry] (within NXtomo[definition])

Table A.123: Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NX-tomo[definition])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
title	NX_CHAR		
start_time	NX_DATE_TIME		
end_time	NX_DATE_TIME		
definition	NXtomo		Official NeXus DTD or NXDL schema to which this file conforms
instrument	NXinstrument		Look for special case table instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) below.
sample	NXsample		Look for special case table sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) below.
control	NXmonitor		Look for special case table control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) below.
data	NXdata		

## A.3.11.2 Special case table: instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])

 $Table\ A.124:\ Tabular\ representation\ of\ instrument[NXinstrument]\ (within\ entry[NXentry])$ 

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
	NXsource		Look for special case table [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) below.
bright_field	NXdetector		Look for special case table bright_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) below.
dark_field	NXdetector		Look for special case table dark_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) below.
sample	NXdetector		Look for special case table sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) below.

## A.3.11.3 Special case table: [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

Table A.125: Tabular representation of [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
type	NX_CHAR		
name	NX_CHAR		
	neutron		
probe	l x-ray		
	l electron		

#### A.3.11.4 Special case table: bright\_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

 $Table \ A.126: \ Tabular \ representation \ of \ bright\_field[NX detector] \ (within \ instrument[NX instrument])$ 

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
data	NX_INT		Dimensions: size="3"  • dim: index="1" value="nBrightFrames" value=""  • dim: index="2" value="xsize" value=""  • dim: index="3" value="ysize" value=""
sequence_number	NX_CHAR		In order to properly sort the order of the images taken in (for example) a tomography experiment, a sequence number is stored with each image.  Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="nBrightFrames" value=""

## A.3.11.5 Special case table: dark\_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

 $Table\ A.127:\ Tabular\ representation\ of\ dark\_field[NX detector]\ (within\ instrument[NX instrument])$ 

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
data	NX_INT		Dimensions: size="3"  • dim: index="1" value="nDarkFrames" value=""  • dim: index="2" value="xsize" value=""  • dim: index="3" value="ysize" value=""
sequence_number	NX_CHAR		Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="nDarkFrames" value=""

## A.3.11.6 Special case table: sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

Table A.128: Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
data	NX_INT		Dimensions: size="3"  • dim: index="1" value="nSampleFrames" value=""  • dim: index="2" value="xsize" value=""  • dim: index="3" value="ysize" value=""
sequence_number	NX_CHAR		Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="nSampleFrames" value=""
x_pixel_size	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	
y_pixel_size	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	
distance	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	Distance between detector and sample

## A.3.11.7 Special case table: sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.129: Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
name	NX_CHAR		Descriptive name of sample
rotation_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="nSampleFrames" value=""

#### A.3.11.8 Special case table: control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.130: Tabular representation of control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
integral	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	Total integral monitor counts for each measured frame. This is in order to correct for fluctuations in the beam between frames Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="nDarkFrames + nBrightFrames + nSampleFrame" value=""

A description of each NeXus Application Class is given.

#### A.3.12 NXtomophase

category application (application definition)

**NXDL source:** NXtomophase (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/applications/NXtomophase.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0b

**SVN Id** 

NeXus Definition Language NXDL

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXdata, NXdetector, NXentry, NXinstrument, NXmonitor, NXsample, NXsource

**documentation** This is the application definition for x-ray or neutron tomography raw data with phase contrast variation at each point. In tomography first some dark field images are measured, some bright field images and, of course the sample. In order to properly sort the order of the images taken, a sequence number is stored with each image.

Table A.131: Tabular representation of NXtomophase[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
entry	NXentry		Look for special case table entry[NXentry] (within NXtomophase[definition]) below.

## A.3.12.1 Special case table: entry[NXentry] (within NXtomophase[definition])

Table A.132: Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomophase[definition])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
title	NX_CHAR		
start_time	NX_DATE_TIME		
end_time	NX_DATE_TIME		
definition	NXtomophase		Official NeXus DTD or NXDL schema to which this file conforms
instrument	NXinstrument		Look for special case table instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) below.
sample	NXsample		Look for special case table sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) below.
control	NXmonitor		Look for special case table control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry]) below.
data	NXdata		

#### A.3.12.2 Special case table: instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.133: Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
	NXsource		Look for special case table [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) below.

Table A.133: (continued)

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
bright_field	NXdetector		Look for special case table bright_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) below.
dark_field	NXdetector		Look for special case table dark_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) below.
sample	NXdetector		Look for special case table sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) below.

## A.3.12.3 Special case table: [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

Table A.134: Tabular representation of [NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
type	NX_CHAR		
name	NX_CHAR		
	neutron		
probe	l x-ray		
	l electron		

## A.3.12.4 Special case table: bright\_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

 $Table\ A.135:\ Tabular\ representation\ of\ bright\_field[NX detector]\ (within\ instrument[NX instrument])$ 

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
data	NX_INT		Dimensions: size="3"  • dim: index="1" value="nBrightFrames" value=""  • dim: index="2" value="xsize" value=""  • dim: index="3" value="ysize" value=""
sequence_number	NX_CHAR		Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="nBrightFrames" value=""

## A.3.12.5 Special case table: dark\_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

Table A.136: Tabular representation of dark\_field[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
data	NX_INT		Dimensions: size="3"  • dim: index="1" value="nDarkFrames" value=""  • dim: index="2" value="xsize" value=""  • dim: index="3" value="ysize" value=""
sequence_number	NX_CHAR		Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="nDarkFrames" value=""

## A.3.12.6 Special case table: sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

Table A.137: Tabular representation of sample[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
			Dimensions: size="4" • dim: index="1" value="nSampleFrames" value=""
data	NX_INT		• dim: index="2" value="nPhase" value=""
			• dim: index="3" value="xsize" value=""
			• dim: index="4" value="ysize" value=""
			Dimensions: size="2"
sequence_number	NX_CHAR		dim: index="1" value="nSampleFrames" value=""
			• dim: index="2" value="nPhase" value=""
x_pixel_size	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	
y_pixel_size	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	
distance	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	Distance between detector and sample

## A.3.12.7 Special case table: sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.138: Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
name	NX_CHAR		Descriptive name of sample
rotation_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="nSampleFrames" value=""

## A.3.12.8 Special case table: control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.139: Tabular representation of control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
integral	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	Total integral monitor counts for each measured frame. This is in order to correct for fluctuations in the beam between frames Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="nDarkFrames + nBrightFrames + nSampleFrame" value=""

A description of each NeXus Application Class is given.

## A.3.13 NXtomoproc

category application (application definition)

NXDL source: NXtomoproc (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/applications/NXtomoproc.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0b

**SVN Id** 

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXdata, NXentry, NXinstrument, NXparameters, NXprocess, NXsample, NXsource

**documentation** This is an application definition for the final result of a tomography experiment: a 3D construction of some volume of physical properties.

Table A.140: Tabular representation of NXtomoproc[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
			Look for special case table entry[NXentry]
entry	NXentry		(within NXtomoproc[definition]) below.

## A.3.13.1 Special case table: entry[NXentry] (within NXtomoproc[definition])

Table A.141: Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXtomo-proc[definition])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
title	NX_CHAR		
definition	NXtomoproc		Official NeXus DTD or NXDL schema to which this file conforms
	NXinstrument		Look for special case table [NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) below.
	NXsample		Look for special case table [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) below.

Table A.141: (continued)

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
reconstruction	NXprocess		Look for special case table reconstruction[NXprocess] (within entry[NXentry]) below.
data	NXdata		Look for special case table data[NXdata] (within entry[NXentry]) below.

## A.3.13.2 Special case table: [NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.142: Tabular representation of [NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
	NXsource		Look for special case table [NXsource] (within [NXinstrument]) below.

## A.3.13.3 Special case table: [NXsource] (within [NXinstrument])

Table A.143: Tabular representation of [NXsource] (within [NXinstrument])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
type	NX_CHAR		
name	NX_CHAR		
	neutron		
probe	l x-ray		
	l electron		

## A.3.13.4 Special case table: [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.144: Tabular representation of [NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
name	NX_CHAR		Descriptive name of sample

#### A.3.13.5 Special case table: reconstruction[NXprocess] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.145: Tabular representation of reconstruction [NX process] (within entry [NX entry])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
program	NX_CHAR		Name of the program used for reconstruction

Table A.145: (continued)

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
version	NX_CHAR		Version of the program used
date	NX_DATE_TIME		Date and time of reconstruction processing.
parameters	NXparameters		Look for special case table parameters[NXparameters] (within reconstruction[NXprocess]) below.

## A.3.13.6 Special case table: parameters[NXparameters] (within reconstruction[NXprocess])

Table A.146: Tabular representation of parameters [NX parameters] (within reconstruction [NX process])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
raw_file	NX_CHAR		Original raw data file this data was derived from

## A.3.13.7 Special case table: data[NXdata] (within entry[NXentry])

 $Table\ A.147:\ Tabular\ representation\ of\ data[NXdata]\ (within\ entry[NXentry])$ 

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
data	NX_INT	Cinto	This is the reconstructed volume. This can be different things. Please indicates in the unit attribute what physical quantity this really is. Dimensions: size="3"  • dim: index="1" value="nx" value=""  • dim: index="2" value="nx" value=""  • dim: index="3" value="nz" value=""
scaling_factor	NX_FLOAT		The elements in data are usually float values really. For efficiency reasons these are usually stored as integers after scaling with a scale factor. This value is this scale factor. It is required to get the actual physical value, when necessary.
offset	NX_FLOAT		An eventuell offset to apply to the data in data
x	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	This is an array holding the values to use for the x-axis of data. The units must be appropriate for the measurement.  Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="nx" value=""
У	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	This is an array holding the values to use for the y-axis of data. The units must be appropriate for the measurement.  Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="ny" value=""

Table A.147: (continued)

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
Z	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	This is an array holding the values to use for the z-axis of data. The units must be appropriate for the measurement.  Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="nz" value=""

A description of each NeXus Application Class is given.

#### A.3.14 NXxbase

category application (application definition)

NXDL source: NXxbase (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/applications/NXxbase.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0b

**SVN Id** 

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXobject

other classes included: NXdata, NXdetector, NXentry, NXinstrument, NXmonitor, NXmonochromator, NXsample, NXsource

documentation This definition covers the common parts of all monochromatic single crystal raw data application definitions

Table A.148: Tabular representation of NXxbase[definition]

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
entry	NXentry		Look for special case table entry[NXentry] (within NXxbase[definition]) below.

## A.3.14.1 Special case table: entry[NXentry] (within NXxbase[definition])

Table A.149: Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXxbase[definition])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
title	NX_CHAR		
start_time	NX_DATE_TIME		
end_time	NX_DATE_TIME		
definition	NXxbase		Official NeXus DTD or NXDL schema to which this file conforms
instrument	NXinstrument		Look for special case table instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) below.
sample	NXsample		Look for special case table sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) below.

Table A.149: (continued)

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
			Look for special case table
control	NXmonitor		control[NXmonitor] (within
CONCIOI	NAMOIIIO		entry[NXentry]) below.
			The name of this group id data if there is only
			one detector; if there are several the names will
	NXdata		be data1, data2, data3 and will data will point
			to the corresponding detector groups in the
			instrument hierarchy.

## A.3.14.2 Special case table: instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.150: Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
source	NXsource		Look for special case table source[NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) below.
monochromator	NXmonochromator		Look for special case table monochromator[NXmonochromator] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) below.
detector	NXdetector		The name of the group is detector if there is only one detector, if there are several, names have to be detector1, detector2,detectorn Occurences: 1: 9999999999999999999999999999999999

## A.3.14.3 Special case table: source[NXsource] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

 $\label{thm:continuity} \begin{tabular}{ll} Table A.151: & Tabular representation of source[NX source] (within instrument[NX instrument]) \\ \end{tabular}$ 

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
type	NX_CHAR		
name	NX_CHAR		
	neutron		
probe	l x-ray		
	l electron		

## A.3.14.4 Special case table: monochromator[NXmonochromator] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

 $\label{thm:continuity} Table\ A.152: \quad Tabular\ representation\ of\ monochromator[NXmonochromator] \\ (within instrument[NXinstrument])$ 

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
wavelength	NX_FLOAT	NX_WAVELENGTH	

## A.3.14.5 Special case table: detector[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

 $Table \ A.153: \quad Tabular \ representation \ of \ detector[NX detector] \ (within \ instrument[NX instrument])$ 

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
data	NX_INT		The area detector data, the first dimension is always the number of scan points, the second and third are the number of pixels in x and y. The origin is always assumed to be in the center of the detector. maxOccurs is limited to the the number of detectors on your instrument Dimensions: size="3"  • dim: index="1" value="np" value=""  • dim: index="2" value="number of x pixels" value=""  • dim: index="3" value="number of y pixels" value=""
@signal	NX_CHAR		
x_pixel_size	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	
y_pixel_size	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	
distance	NX_FLOAT	NX_LENGTH	

## A.3.14.6 Special case table: sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.154: Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
name	NX_CHAR		Descriptive name of sample
orientation_ma- trix	NX_FLOAT		The orientation matrix according to Busing and Levy conventions. This is not strictly necessary as the UB can always be derived from the data. But let us bow to common usage which includes thie UB nearly always. Dimensions: size="2"  • dim: index="1" value="3" value=""  • dim: index="2" value="3" value=""
unit_cell	NX_FLOAT		The unit cell, a, b, b, alpha, beta, gamma. Again, not strictly necessary, but normally written. Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="6" value=""

#### A.3.14.7 Special case table: control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.155: Tabular representation of control[NXmonitor] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
mode	monitor   timer		Count to a preset value based on either clock time (timer) or received monitor counts (monitor).
preset	NX_FLOAT		preset value for time or monitor
integral	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANY	Total integral monitor counts

A description of each NeXus Application Class is given.

#### A.3.15 NXxeuler

category application (application definition)

NXDL source: NXxeuler (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/applications/NXxeuler.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0b

**SVN Id** 

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXxbase

other classes included: NXdata, NXdetector, NXentry, NXinstrument, NXsample

documentation This is the application definition for raw data from a four circle diffractometer with an eulerian cradle. It extends NXxbase, so the full definition is the content of NXxbase plus the data defined here. All four angles are logged in order to support arbitray scans in reciprocal space.

Table A.156: Tabular representation of NXxeuler[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
entry	NXentry		Look for special case table entry[NXentry] (within NXxeuler[definition]) below.
encry	TVACHUY		(within tvaxeuer [definition]) below.

## A.3.15.1 Special case table: entry[NXentry] (within NXxeuler[definition])

Table A.157: Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXxeuler[definition])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
			Official NeXus DTD or NXDL schema to
definition	NXxeuler		which this file conforms

Table A.157: (continued)

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
instrument	NXinstrument		Look for special case table instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) below.
sample	NXsample		Look for special case table sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) below.
name	NXdata		

## A.3.15.2 Special case table: instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.158: Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
detector	NXdetector		Look for special case table detector[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) below.

## A.3.15.3 Special case table: detector[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

 $\label{thm:continuity} Table \ A.159: \quad Tabular \ representation \ of \ detector[NX detector] \ (within \ instrument[NX instrument])$ 

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
polar_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	The polar_angle (two theta) where the detector is placed at each scan point.  Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="np" value=""

## A.3.15.4 Special case table: sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.160: Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
rotation_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	This is an array holding the sample rotation angle at each scan point Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="np" value=""
chi	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	This is an array holding the chi angle of the eulerian cradle at each scan point Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="np" value=""

Table A.160: (continued)

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
phi	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	This is an array holding the phi rotation of the eulerain cradle at each scan point Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="np" value=""

A description of each NeXus Application Class is given.

## A.3.16 NXxkappa

category application (application definition)

NXDL source: NXxkappa (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/applications/NXxkappa.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0b

**SVN Id** 

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXxbase

other classes included: NXdata, NXdetector, NXentry, NXinstrument, NXsample

**documentation** This is the application definition for raw data from a kappa geometry (CAD4) single crystal diffractometer. It extends NXxbase, so the full definition is the content of NXxbase plus the data defined here.

Table A.161: Tabular representation of NXxkappa[definition]

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
entry	NXentry		Look for special case table entry[NXentry] (within NXxkappa[definition]) below.

## A.3.16.1 Special case table: entry[NXentry] (within NXxkappa[definition])

Table A.162: Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXxkappa[definition])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
definition	NXxkappa		Official NeXus DTD or NXDL schema to which this file conforms
instrument	NXinstrument		Look for special case table instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) below.
sample	NXsample		Look for special case table sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) below.
name	NXdata		

## A.3.16.2 Special case table: instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.163: Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
detector	NXdetector		Look for special case table
			detector[NXdetector] (within
			instrument[NXinstrument]) below.

#### A.3.16.3 Special case table: detector[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

 $\label{thm:continuity} Table \ A.164: \quad Tabular \ representation \ of \ detector[NX detector] \ (within \ instrument[NX instrument])$ 

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
polar_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	The polar_angle (two theta) at each scan point Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="np" value=""

## A.3.16.4 Special case table: sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.165: Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
rotation_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	This is an array holding the sample rotation angle at each scan point Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="np" value=""
kappa	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	This is an array holding the kappa angle at each scan point Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="np" value=""
phi	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	This is an array holding the phi angle at each scan point Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="np" value=""
alpha	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	This holds the inclination angle of the kappa arm.

A description of each NeXus Application Class is given.

## A.3.17 NXxnb

category application (application definition)

NXDL source: NXxnb (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/applications/NXxnb.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0b

**SVN Id** 

NeXus Definition Language NXDL

extends class: NXxbase

other classes included: NXdata, NXdetector, NXentry, NXinstrument, NXsample

**documentation** This is the application definition for raw data from a single crystal diffractometer measuring in normal beam mode. It extends NXxbase, so the full definition is the content of NXxbase plus the data defined here. All angles are logged in order to support arbitray scans in reciprocal space.

Table A.166: Tabular representation of NXxnb[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
entry	NXentry		Look for special case table entry[NXentry] (within NXxnb[definition]) below.

#### A.3.17.1 Special case table: entry[NXentry] (within NXxnb[definition])

Table A.167: Tabular representation of entry[NXentry] (within NXxnb[definition])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
definition	NXxnb		Official NeXus DTD or NXDL schema to
delinicion	IVAXIIO		which this file conforms
			Look for special case table
instrument	NXinstrument		instrument[NXinstrument] (within
Instrument	NAmstrument		entry[NXentry]) below.
			Look for special case table
a amm la	NVsampla		sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])
sample	NXsample		below.
name	NXdata		

## A.3.17.2 Special case table: instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.168: Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
detector	NXdetector		Look for special case table detector[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) below.

#### A.3.17.3 Special case table: detector[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

Table A.169: Tabular representation of detector[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
polar_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	The polar_angle (gamma) of the detector for each scan point.  Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="np" value=""
tilt_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	The angle by which the detector has been tilted out of the scattering plane.  Dimensions: size="1"  • dim: index="1" value="np" value=""

#### A.3.17.4 Special case table: sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.170: Tabular representation of sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
rotation_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	This is an array holding the sample rotation angle at each scan point Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="np" value=""

A description of each NeXus Application Class is given.

#### A.3.18 NXxrot

category application (application definition)

NXDL source: NXxrot (http://svn.nexusformat.org/definitions/trunk/applications/NXxrot.nxdl.xml)

version 1.0b

SVN Id

**NeXus Definition Language NXDL** 

extends class: NXxbase

other classes included: NXdata, NXdetector, NXentry, NXinstrument, NXsample

**documentation** This is the application definition for raw data from a rotation camera. It extends NXxbase, so the full definition is the content of NXxbase plus the data defined here.

Table A.171: Tabular representation of NXxrot[definition]

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
entry	NXentry		Look for special case table entry[NXentry] (within NXxrot[definition]) below.

## A.3.18.1 Special case table: entry[NXentry] (within NXxrot[definition])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
definition	NXxrot		Official NeXus DTD or NXDL schema to which this file conforms
instrument	NXinstrument		Look for special case table instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry]) below.
sample	NXsample		Look for special case table sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry]) below.
name	NXdata		

## A.3.18.2 Special case table: instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])

Table A.173: Tabular representation of instrument[NXinstrument] (within entry[NXentry])

Name and Attributes	Type	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
detector	NXdetector		Look for special case table detector[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument]) below.

## A.3.18.3 Special case table: detector[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

Table A.174: Tabular representation of detector[NXdetector] (within instrument[NXinstrument])

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
polar_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	The polar_angle (two theta) where the detector is placed.

## A.3.18.4 Special case table: sample[NXsample] (within entry[NXentry])

 $\begin{tabular}{lll} Table A.175: & Tabular representation of sample [NX sample] & (within entry [NX entry]) & \end{tabular}$ 

Name and Attributes	Туре	Units	Description (and Occurrences)
rotation_angle	NX_FLOAT	NX_ANGLE	This is an array holding the sample rotation angle at each scan point Dimensions: size="1" • dim: index="1" value="np" value=""

## A.4 NeXus Contributed Classes

No NeXus Contributed Classes were defined at the time this version of the manual was created.

# Appendix B

# Roadmap

to be written

## **Appendix C**

## **Brief history of the NeXus format**

June 1994 Mark Koennecke (PSI) made a similar proposal using netCDF for the European neutron scattering community while working at ISIS

August 1994 Jon Tischler (ORNL) proposed an HDF-based format as a standard for data storage at APS

**1995 and 1996** This was the basis for the current designed which was developed at SoftNeSS 1995 (at NIST) and SoftNeSS 1996 (at ANL)

August 1996 NeXus Abstract Programmer Interface (NAPI) released

October 1996 Przemek Klosowski (NCNR) produced a first draft of the NeXus proposal drawing on ideas from both sources

July 1997 SINQ at PSI started writing NeXus files to store raw data

summer 2001 MLNSC at LANL started writing NeXus files to store raw data

**September 2002** NeXus API version 2.0.0 is released

October 2003 NeXus International Advisory Committee (NIAC) formed and first meeting held at CalTech

July 2005 NeXus API version 3.0.0 is released

May 2007 NeXus API version 4.0.0 is released

October 2007 NeXus API version 4.1.0 is released

October 2008 The NeXus Definition Language is defined

## **Appendix D**

## **NIAC**

The purpose of the NeXus International Advisory Committee (NIAC)<sup>1</sup> is to supervise the development and maintenance of the NeXus common data format for neutron, x-ray, and muon science. This purpose includes, but is not limited to, the following activities.

- 1. To establish policies concerning the definition, use, and promotion of the NeXus format.
- 2. To ensure that the specification of the NeXus format is sufficiently complete and clear for its use in the exchange and archival of neutron, x-ray, and muon data.
- 3. To receive and examine all proposed amendments and extensions to the NeXus format. In particular, to ratify proposed instrument and group class definitions, to ensure that the data structures conform to the basic NeXus specification, and to ensure that the definitions of data items are clear and unambiguous and conform to accepted scientific usage.
- 4. To ensure that documentation of the NeXus format is sufficient, current, and available to potential users both on the internet and in other forms.
- 5. To coordinate with the developers of the NeXus Application Programming Interface to ensure that it supports the use of the NeXus format in the neutron, x-ray, and muon communities, and to promote other software development that will benefit users of the NeXus format.
- 6. To coordinate with other organizations that maintain and develop related data formats to ensure maximum compatibility.

The committee will meet at least once every calendar year according to the following plan:

- In years coinciding with the NOBUGS series of conferences (once every two years), members of the entire NIAC will meet as a satellite meeting to NOBUGS, along with interested members of the community.
- In intervening years, the executive officers of the NIAC will attend, along with interested members of the NIAC. This is intended to be a working meeting with a small group.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>For more details about the NIAC constitution, procedures, and meetings, refer to the NIAC wiki page: http://www.nexusformat.org/NIAC

NeXus Manual 129 / 130

# **Chapter 7**

# Index

A	NXfermi_chopper, 54
API, xvi, 2	NXfilter, 55
attributes, 10, 35	NXflipper, 56
data, 4, 7, 10, 13	NXgeometry, 56
global, 10, 13	NXguide, 57
	NXinsertion_device, 58
C	NXinstrument, 5, 59
classes	NXlog, 60
application definitions, 78	NXmirror, 61
NXarchive, 78	NXmoderator, 61
NXgisas, 81	NXmonitor, 62
NXiqproc, 84	NXmonochromator, 63
NXmonopd, 86	NXnote, 64
NXrefscan, 89	NXobject, 65
NXreftof, 91	NXorientation, 65
NXsas, 93	NXparameters, 66
NXscan, 97	NXpolarizer, 66
NXtas, 99	NXpositioner, 67
NXtofraw, 102	NXprocess, 67
NXtomo, 105	NXroot, 68
NXtomophase, 108	NXsample, 5, 69
NXtomoproc, 112	NXsensor, 72
NXxbase, 115	NXshape, 74
NXxeuler, 118	NXsource, 74
NXxkappa, 120	NXtranslation, 76
NXxnb, 121	NXuser, 76
NXxrot, 123	NXvelocity_selector, 77
base classes, 36	contributed definitions, 125
NXaperture, 36	
NXattenuator, 36	${f E}$
NXbeam, 37	example
NXbeam_stop, 39	NAPI, <mark>7</mark>
NXbending_magnet, 39	simple, 3
NXcharacterization, 40	very simple, 6
NXcollimator, 40	
NXcrystal, 42	F
NXdata, 5, 44	FAQ, 17
NXdetector, 45	
NXdetector_group, 49	<b>G</b>
NXdisk_chopper, 50	geometry, 14–16
NXentry, 5, 51	Н
NXenvironment, 52	HDF, 2
NXevent_data, 53	11D1, 2

```
instrument definitions, 6
link, 11, 12, 15
McStas, 14, 16
NAPI
    NeXus, NAPI, 6
NeXus, 3
    design aims, 11
    Design Principles, 4
    low-level file formats, 6
    NAPI, 6
NeXus Definition Language, see NXDL
NeXus International Advisory Committee, see NIAC
NIAC, 18, 128
NXDL, 11, 17, 18, 21, 23, 34
P
plottable data, 17
Schematron, 21
U
UDunits, 16
units, 4, 7, 10, 13, 16, 35
validation, 20, 21
    NeXus data files, 21
    NXDL specifications, 21
verification, see validation
XML, 2, 17
XML Schema (XSD), 21
XSLT, 21
```